# 2014 Chevrolet Captiva Owner Manual

## Vehicle Care
- General Information: 10-2
- Vehicle Checks: 10-3
- Bulb Replacement: 10-25
- Electrical System: 10-29
- Vehicle Tools: 10-36
- Wheels and Tyres: 10-38
- Jump Starting: 10-54
- Towing the Vehicle: 10-57
- Appearance Care: 10-60

## Service and Maintenance
- General Information: 11-1
- Scheduled Maintenance: 11-2
- Recommended Fluids: 11-8

## Technical Data
- Vehicle Identification: 12-1
- Vehicle Data: 12-3

## Customer Information
- Customer Information: 13-1
- Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy: 13-1

## Index
- i-1
Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this

When this Owner's Manual refers to a repairer visit, we recommend your Chevrolet Service Partner.

All Chevrolet Service Partners provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Chevrolet work according to specific Chevrolet instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

Using this Manual
- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.

The Owner's Manual uses the factory engine designations. The corresponding sales designations can be found in the chapter "Technical data".

Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.

The vehicle display screens may not support your specific language.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

⚠️ Danger
Text marked ⚠️ provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.
iv Introduction

⚠️ Warning

Text marked ⚠️ provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

⚠️ Caution

Text marked Caution provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving
Chevrolet
In Brief

Initial Drive Information
Unlocking the Vehicle 1-1
Seat Adjustment 1-1
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-3
Safety Belts 1-3
Mirror Adjustment 1-4
Steering Wheel Adjustment 1-4
Instrument Panel Overview 1-5
Exterior Lighting 1-7
Horn 1-9
Washer and Wiper Systems 1-9
Windscreen Wiper/Washer 1-10
Climate Controls 1-10
Parking 1-11
Transmission 1-12
Getting Started 1-13

Initial Drive Information
Unlocking the Vehicle
Radio remote control

1. LOCK button
2. UNLOCK button

See Radio Remote Control on page 2-2.
See Central Locking System on page 2-8.

Seat Adjustment
Seat positioning

To move seat forward or backward, pull the lever and slide seat to desired position.
Release the handle and make sure the seat is locked in place.
See Seat Adjustment on page 3-4.
See Seat Position on page 3-3.
1-2 In Brief

Seat backrests

Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the seat to engage audibly. Do not lean on seat when adjusting.

Seat height

Pumping the lever on the outside of the seat cushion until the seat cushion is adjusted to the desired position.
To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

Seat lumbar support

To increase or decrease the driver's seat lumbar support, move the lever forward or rearward.
Head Restraint Adjustment

Height adjustment
Pull the head restraint upwards.
To move down press the catch and push the head restraint downwards.
See and Head Restraints on page 3-1.

Horizontal adjustment
Pull the head restraint forwards. To move back pull the head restraint forwards. Then it is moved automatically backwards.

Safety Belts
Withdraw belt from reel, guide it untwisted across the body and engage the latch plate in the buckle.
Tension the lap belt regularly whilst driving by tugging the shoulder belt.
See Safety Belts on page 3-12.
1-4  In Brief

Mirror Adjustment
Interior Mirror

To reduce dazzle, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing. See Manual Rearview Mirror on page 2-17.

Exterior Mirrors

Select the mirror you want to adjust by moving the selector switch to "L" for LH mirror or to "R" for RH mirror. See Remote Control Mirrors on page 2-16.

Steering Wheel Adjustment

Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked. Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary.
In Brief 1-5

Instrument Panel Overview

LHD Vehicle
1-6  In Brief

RHD Vehicle
1. Air vents
2. Turn and lane / Exterior lamp controls
3. Horn
4. Instrument cluster
5. Windscreen wiper / Washer
6. Hazard lights / ESC OFF switch
7. Centre deposit box
8. DCS switch / Eco (stop/start) switch or Park assist switch
9. Combination switch
10. Card holder
11. Coin storage
12. Bonnet release lever
13. Steering wheel audio controls
14. Cruise control / Climate control buttons
15. Climate control systems
16. Gear lever
17. Electric parking brake (EPB) switch
18. Eco switch
19. Cigarette lighter
20. Audio system
21. Glove box
22. Front passenger seat belt reminder lamp / Passenger airbag OFF indicator

**Exterior Lighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 (OFF)</td>
<td>To turn off all lamps, turn the knob to OFF position. All lamps are off and return knob to its original AUTO position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>Exterior lamps and instrument panel lamps are automatically turned on or off depending on external lighting conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (On)</td>
<td>The tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lamps are illuminated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H (High)</td>
<td>The headlamps and all of the above lamps are illuminated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1.

To turn the exterior lamps on or off, turn the light switch knob. The light switch has four positions as follows:
1-8 In Brief

Headlamp main/dipped beam changer

To switch from dipped to main beam, push lever.
To switch to dipped beam, push lever again or pull.
See Headlamp Main/Dipped Beam Changer on page 6-3.
See Flash-to-Pass on page 6-4.

Hazard lights

Operated with the △ button.
See Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4.

Turn and lane-change signals

lever up = right indicator
lever down = left indicator
See Indicator and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-5.
Horn

Washer and Wiper Systems

Windscreen wiper

To operate the windscreen wipers, turn the ignition ON and move the windscreen wiper / washer lever upward.

HI: Continuous wipe, fast speed.
LO: Continuous wipe, slow speed.
INT: Intermittent operation.
OFF: System off.
MIST: Misting function.

Windscreen washer

Pull lever.
See Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3.
See Washer Fluid on page 10-20.
**1-10 In Brief**

**Windscreen Wiper/Washer**

**Rear Window Wiper**

To operate the tailgate wiper, turn the ignition ACC or ON and rotate the end of the windscreen wiper/washer lever upward.

The tailgate wiper operates in the following three positions:

- **OFF**: System off.
- **INT**: Intermittent operation.
- **LO**: Continuous wipe, slow speed.

**Climate Controls**

**Heated rear window, heated exterior mirrors**

Operated by pressing the button.

See **Heated Mirrors** on page 2-17.

See **Heated Rear Window** on page 2-21.

- **Washer**

Press the button at the end of the lever until the washers begin.

See **Rear Window Wiper/Washer** on page 5-6.

See **Washer Fluid** on page 10-20.
Demisting and defrosting the windows

Turn the air distribution knob to DEFROST.

See "Defrosting windscreen" under Heating and Ventilation System on page 8-1.

See "Demisting windscreen" under Air Conditioning System on page 8-3.

Parking

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily flammable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply parking brake without pressing release button. Apply as firmly as possible on downhill or uphill slopes. Depress the brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.
- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or P position before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
- If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close windows.
- Lock the vehicle.
Transmission

Manual gearbox

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the gear lever into gear, and slowly release the clutch.

To shift into reverse, press the button on the back of the gear lever knob while moving the gear lever into the reverse position.


Automatic transmission

P (PARK): Locks the front wheels. Select P only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied.

R (REVERSE): Select R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N (NEUTRAL): Neutral gear.

D: For all normal driving conditions. Allows the transmission to shift into all 6 forward gears.

+, -: Manual mode position.
Push the release button to shift. Arrows indicate shifts that do not require you to push the release button.

Depress the brake pedal and push release button to shift.

Shifts that require you to push the release button are indicated by arrows.

Check before starting off

- Tyre pressure and condition.
- Engine oil level and fluid levels.
- All windows, mirrors, exterior lighting and number plates are free from dirt, snow and ice and are operational.
- Proper position of seats, seat belts and mirrors.

Starting engine with the ignition switch

- Check brake function at low speed, particularly if the brakes are wet.

- Turn the key to position ACC, move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock
- Manual gearbox: operate clutch
- Automatic transmission: Move gear lever to P or N.
- Do not accelerate
1-14   In Brief

- Diesel engine: turn the key to position ON for preheating until \( \mathbb{E} \) goes out.
- Turn the key to position START, depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal then release when engine is running.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine, turn key back to LOCK.
Keys and Locks

Keys
Keys ........................................ 2-1
Radio Remote Control ........ 2-2
Open & Start System .... 2-4
Door Locks ................. 2-7
Manual Door Locks ...... 2-8
Central Locking System ... 2-8
Safety Locks ............. 2-9

Doors
Tailgate ...................... 2-10

Vehicle Security
Anti-theft Alarm System ... 2-11

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors .... 2-16
Remote Control Mirrors .. 2-16
Folding Mirrors ........ 2-16
Heated Mirrors .......... 2-17

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror ... 2-17
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror ........ 2-18

Windows
Power Windows ............ 2-19
Heated Rear Window ...... 2-21
Sun Visors ............... 2-21

Roof
Sunroof ................. 2-22

Keys and Locks

Replacement keys
The key number is specified on a detachable tag.
The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.
See "Lock" under Exterior Care on page 10-60.
2-2 Keys

Key with foldaway key section
Press button to extend. To fold the key, press the button and fold the key manually.

Radio Remote Control
Used to operate:
• Central locking system
• Anti-theft alarm system

1. LOCK button: Locks all doors. Hazard lamps will flash once and the anti-theft system will be activated.
2. UNLOCK button: Unlocks all doors. Hazard lamps will flash twice and anti-theft system will be deactivated.

In some countries, to unlock driver’s door, press the UNLOCK button once.
To unlock all doors, press the UNLOCK button again within 3 seconds.

Note: LOCK and UNLOCK buttons are not operated while the key is in the ignition switch.

Note: When you press UNLOCK button on the remote keyless entry transmitter, instrument panel lamps will come on automatically and stay on for about 30 seconds until the ignition switch is in the ACC position.
The radio remote control has an approximate range of about 6 metres (20 feet). This range can be affected by outside influences.
The hazard lights confirm operation.
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Fault
If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, it may be due to the following:
• Range exceeded,
• Battery voltage too low,
Frequent, repeated operation of the remote control while not in range, which will require resynchronisation,

Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time,

Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

**Radio remote control battery replacement**

Replace the battery as soon as the range is noticeably diminished.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

**Key with foldaway key section**

1. Open the transmitter cover.
2. Remove the used battery. Avoid touching the circuit board to other components.
3. Install the new battery. Be sure the negative side (-) faces down toward the base.
4. Close the transmitter cover.
5. Check the operation of the transmitter with your vehicle.

**Fixed key**

Have the battery replaced by a repairer.

- **Caution**
  
  Avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery with your bare fingers. Handling will shorten battery life.

**Note:** Use CR2032 (or equivalent) replacement battery.

1. Open the transmitter cover.
2. Remove the used battery. Avoid touching the circuit board to other components.
3. Install the new battery. Be sure the negative side (-) faces down toward the base.
4. Close the transmitter cover.
5. Check the operation of the transmitter with your vehicle.

**Caution**

Avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery with your bare fingers. Handling will shorten battery life.

**Note:** Used lithium batteries can harm the environment.

Follow local recycling laws for disposal.

Do not discard with household waste.

**Note:** In order to keep the transmitter working properly, follow these guidelines:

Avoid dropping the transmitter.

Do not place heavy objects on the transmitter.
2-4 Keys

Keep the transmitter away from water and direct sunlight. If the transmitter gets wet, wipe it with a soft cloth.

Open & Start System

If the vehicle has the Keyless Access System, the transmitter has a thin button (A) near the bottom of the transmitter used to remove the key.

Press the button (A) and pull the key out. Do not pull the key out without pressing the button (A).

The key, inside the transmitter, is used for the driver door key cylinder when the key fob is out of battery or it is in emergency. See your dealer if a new key is needed.

1.  (Lock): Press once to lock the all doors. The indicator lamps flash once or the horn sounds once to confirm locking.

2.  (Unlock): Press once to unlock all doors. The indicator lamps flash twice and anti-theft system will be deactivated. In some countries according to vehicle configuration, to unlock the driver’s door, press the UNLOCK button once. Then, to unlock all the doors, press the UNLOCK button again within 5 seconds.

3.  (Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and hold for about two seconds to locate the vehicle. The indicator lamps flash three times and the horn sounds three times.

Keyless Unlocking
With the keyless access transmitter within 1m, approach the front door and push the button on the door handle to unlock and open the door. If the transmitter is recognised, the door will unlock and open.

⚠️ Caution

The button on the door handle is used only for keyless unlocking function. When you leave vehicle, lock all doors by pushing the lock button in the keyless access transmitter or be sure to check activating the Keyless locking function.

The ignition control knob can be turned to four different positions.

The keyless access transmitter should be inside the vehicle when trying to turn the ignition control knob.

1: LOCK(Off)
2: ACC
3: ON
4: START

- Manual gearbox: Operate clutch. Turn the ignition control knob to the START position, depressing the clutch pedal and releasing the Electric Park Brake switch with brake pedal pressed when engine is running.
- Automatic transmission: Move the gear lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.
- Diesel engine: Turn the ignition control knob to the ON position for preheating until \(\text{N} \) goes out.

Turn the ignition control knob to the START position.

When the engine begins cranking, let go of the ignition control knob, it will return to the ON position.

If ignition control knob does not turn, try pushing the knob in and turning again.
2-6 Keys

If the transmitter is not in the vehicle or something is interfering with the transmitter, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) in the middle of the cluster will display ELECTRONIC KEY NOT DETECTED.

Keyless Locking
The doors are automatically locked after several seconds if the ignition is off, all doors are closed and at least one keyless access transmitter has been removed from the interior of the vehicle.

This function can be deactivated by personalisation setting.

At a self-service filling station, if driver gets out of the vehicle with the keyless access transmitter, all doors including fuel filler door and tailgate will be automatically locked after several seconds. Press the button on the door handle or push the unlock button in the keyless access transmitter to unlock all doors including fuel filler door and tailgate during fuelling or when fuelling is done.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle
Only keyless access transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen transmitters no longer work.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery
If the transmitter battery is weak, the DIC in the middle of the cluster may display ELECTRONIC KEY NOT DETECTED when you try to start the vehicle. To start the vehicle, place the transmitter in the centre console storage area transmitter pocket with the buttons facing up. Then, with the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and turn the ignition control knob. Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.
Battery Replacement

1. Remove the key from the transmitter by pressing the thin button near the bottom of the transmitter and pulling the key out. Do not pull the key out without pressing the button.

2. Separate the transmitter with a flat, thin object inserted into the slot on the side of the transmitter.

3. Remove the old battery.

4. Insert the new battery, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.

5. Snap the transmitter back together.

6. Reinstall the key into the transmitter.

Door Locks

**Warning (Continued)**

Do not leave key in vehicle with children.
These actions can result in serious injury or death.

**Caution**

The button on the door handle is used only for keyless unlocking function. When you leave vehicle, lock all doors by pushing the lock button in the keyless access transmitter or be sure to check activating the Keyless locking function.

The temperature inside the vehicle can increase rapidly and reach much higher levels than temperature outside.
Do not leave unattended children or pets in your vehicle.
Death or serious injury can occur.
Children can operate electric windows, other controls, or move vehicle.
2-8 Keys

Manual Door Locks

Manually lock or unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the key slot.

To lock any door from the inside, pull the door lock button.
To unlock any door from the inside, push the door lock button.

Central Locking System

You can activate the central door locking system from the driver's door. This system allows you to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate from the driver's door, using either the key or keyless remote (from outside) or the door lock switch (from inside).

Central locking button

You can also lock or unlock the doors with the door lock switches on the driver's door trim pad.
Press the right part of the switch to lock the doors.
To unlock the doors, press the left part of the switch.
To open a door from the inside or outside, pull the door handle.
**Note:** Grease should be applied to the door check latch and hinge at regular intervals or if a noise can be heard when opening, closing the door or during driving.

The driver’s door and the front passenger’s door can be opened by pulling the door handle from the inside even if the doors are locked with the door lock button.

**Deadlock**

For further protection when leaving the vehicle, you can deadlock the doors if the vehicle has the additional anti-theft system.

Deadlocking electronically jams all the electric locks so that no door can be opened, even if entry is gained by breaking glass.

**Warning**

Do not use deadlock if there are people in the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

**To engage deadlock, do one of the following:**

- Press the LOCK button twice in succession. Press the LOCK button once to lock the vehicle, and then press it again (within 3 seconds) to engage the deadlock.

- Insert the key in the driver door lock and turn the key twice continuously towards the rear of the vehicle. That is, once to lock the doors, then a second time to engage the deadlock.

To disengage deadlock, press UNLOCK button on the key. This unlocks the doors.

**Note:** Deadlock function operates when all doors and tailgate are closed.

**Caution**

Do not pull the inside door handle while the child security door lock is set to LOCK position. To do so can damage the inside door handle.

**Safety Locks**

- **Note:** Disengaging the deadlock occurs when unlocking the doors in the normal way.
### Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>❗️ Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the child security door locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use a key or suitable screwdriver.

To operate the child security door lock, turn the child locks into horizontal position.

To open a rear door when the child security door lock is activated, open the door from the outside.

To cancel the child security door lock, turn the child locks into vertical position.

### Doors

#### Tailgate

The tailgate can be locked or unlocked by central door locking system.

See *Central Locking System on page 2-8.*

Make sure your hands and any other body parts, as well as those of other persons, are completely away from the tailgate closure area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>❗️ Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When opening or closing the tailgate, be sure to check it is free from obstructions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>❗️ Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driving the vehicle with the tailgate open can allow exhaust gases to enter passenger compartment. Do not drive with tailgate open. Exhaust gases are usually poisonous and can cause injury or death.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On vehicles with the Keyless Access System, if the vehicle is locked, the keyless access transmitter must be within 1 m of the tailgate for it to be recognised; the tailgate can then be opened by the tailgate release button above the number plate.

⚠️ Caution

When unlocking the tailgate by the tailgate release button, all doors will also be unlocked. After closing the tailgate, be sure to press the lock button on the keyless access transmitter for vehicle security.

---

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System

Type 1

Security indicator

Indicates the anti-theft system is working.

The security indicator goes out when doors are unlocked using the keyless entry transmitter or key.

The security indicator comes on when you lock the doors using the keyless entry transmitter or key.

Door lock and anti-theft mode

Activation

1. Close all windows.
2. Turn the ignition key to LOCK and remove the key.
3. Have all passengers exit the vehicle.
4. Close all doors, bonnet and tailgate.
5. Press and release LOCK button on the transmitter.

The LED on the transmitter will flash.

- All doors lock.
- Hazard lights flash once.
- Anti-theft mode is activated after about 30 seconds.

If the key is inserted into the ignition key hole, the transmitter will not operate the anti-theft system.
2-12 Keys

**Note:** The system can be activated even if the windows are open. Close all the windows and doors before leaving the vehicle.

**Note:** If pressing the LOCK button on the transmitter when all doors, bonnet and tailgate are not completely closed, the anti-theft system is in the open state at this point and the security indicator will flash quickly. The anti-theft system transits to the locked state when all doors, bonnet and tailgate are completely closed. The security indicator will illuminate steady when in the locked state. If the LOCK button is pressed after all doors, bonnet and tailgate have been closed, the open state will be bypassed and the system will transit directly to the locked state with the security indicator on steady.

**Note:** The anti-theft system is activated if the doors are locked manually as well as the remote keyless entry transmitter is used.

1. Confirm that the security indicator flashes slowly after illuminating for approximately 30 seconds from the time that the system has entered the locked state. If LOCK button on the transmitter is pressed a second time, the anti-theft system will activate immediately, by passing the 30 seconds delay. The security indicator is located in the right area of the clock.

**Horn sound**

The system provides visual (exterior lamps flash) sign and audible (horns pulse) sound for about 30 seconds when any of the doors, tailgate or the bonnet are opened without using the key or pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.

To stop the horn sound:

- Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the transmitter.
- Unlock the driver’s door with a key.

(In some countries, doing so may not stop the horn sound. Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button to stop the sound) If the unauthorised entry still exists, the alarm sound will be activated with a periodic repeat.

If the system does not operate as described above, have it checked by a repairer. We recommend an authorised repairer.

**Warning**

Do not lock the vehicle if anyone is to be left inside the vehicle.

Never leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle can increase more rapidly and reach much higher levels than the temperature outside.

This can result in serious injury or death.
Siren sound
If your vehicle has additional anti-theft system related to Thatcham insurance, it has intrusion sensor, inclination sensor and glass breakage detection sensor.
This system monitors the interior space through these sensors and activates the siren if an intrusion into the passenger compartment is detected, the tyres are stolen or the unintended towing occurs.
To stop the siren:
• Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the transmitter.
If the unauthorised entry still exists, the siren sound will be activated with a periodic repeat.
Note: Alarming will sound if a door is opened by a key when anti theft mode is activated.
Open the door using UNLOCK button on the transmitter.

Note: Tap the key hole or heat the key if the door does not open with freezing key hole in cold weather.

⚠️ Warning
Do not use the transmitter to lock the vehicle if anyone is to be left inside.
The transmitter activates interior protection, which will trigger the siren if movement is detected inside the vehicle.
Never leave children or pets alone in your vehicle.
The temperature inside the vehicle can increase more rapidly and reach much higher levels than the temperature outside.
This can result in serious injury or death.

If you want to turn off the additional anti-theft system, press the button located on the headlining. Anti-theft off indicator will come on.
When you activate the additional anti-theft system by pressing the button again, anti-theft off indicator will go out.

Door unlock and anti-theft mode
Deactivation
1. Unlock the driver's door with a key. Or,
2-14 Keys

2. Press and release UNLOCK button on the transmitter.
   - The LED on the transmitter will flash.
   - All the doors unlock.
   - Hazard lights flash twice.
   - Anti-theft mode is deactivated.

In some countries, unlocking the driver door with a key may sound alarm. Make sure to press the UNLOCK button on the transmitter to unlock doors.

**Auto door relock**

If the door is not opened or the engine is not started within 30 seconds after disarming the system using the transmitter, all the doors are automatically locked and the anti-theft mode is reactivated.

**Type 2**

**Activation**

To activate the system, press the lock button on the keyless access transmitter.

Anti-theft alarm system is activated after about 30 seconds after keyless locking function.

To activate the system, be sure to have all doors, bonnet, and the tailgate locked.

To avoid setting off the alarm when opening the tailgate, press the tailgate release button above the number plate. The keyless access transmitter must be within 1 m of the tailgate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution (Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unlocked with the keyless access transmitter within 1 m (3 ft) from the rear bumper fascia. After closing the tailgate, be sure to press the lock button on the keyless access transmitter for vehicle security.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Deactivation**

To deactivate the system, do one of the following:

- Press the unlock button on the keyless access transmitter.
- With the keyless access transmitter within 1 m, approach the door and push the button on the door handle.
- Start the engine.

**Immobiliser**

**Type 1**

The immobiliser system provides an additional theft deterrent to your vehicle in which it is installed and
prevents it from being started by unauthorised persons. The valid key for a vehicle equipped with immobiliser system is an ignition key with integrated transponder, which is electronically coded. The transponder is placed invisibly in the ignition key.

Only valid ignition keys can be used to start the engine.

Invalid keys may only open the doors.

The engine is automatically immobilised after the key is turned to LOCK and has been removed from the ignition switch.

If the immobiliser system detects a fault when the ignition switch is in ON position, the immobiliser indicator will flash or illuminate and engine will not start.

Have the vehicle checked, we recommend an authorised repairer.

**Note:** Tap the key slot or heat the key if the door does not open with freezing key slot in cold weather.

**Type 2**

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed. The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the ignition control knob is turned to LOCK/OFF. The immobilisation system is disarmed when the ignition control knob is turned to ON and a valid transmitter is detected in the vehicle.

If the keyless access transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle. The immobiliser light in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system. When trying to start the vehicle, the immobiliser light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on. If the engine does not start and the immobiliser light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition control knob off and try again.

If the ignition control knob does not turn, and the keyless access transmitter appears to be undamaged, try again. If the engine does not start and the immobiliser light stays on, try another keyless access transmitter. If the ignition control knob does rotate, the first transmitter may be faulty. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket located under the centre console.

If the ignition control knob still does not rotate with the other transmitter, or if the ignition control knob does not rotate by placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket, the vehicle needs service. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new keyless access transmitter programmed to the vehicle.
2-16 Keys

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle. Immobiliser does not lock the doors. Always be sure to lock the vehicle to activate anti-theft alarm system when you leave the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors
The convex exterior mirror reduces blind spots. The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Remote Control Mirrors
Select the mirror you want to adjust by moving the selector switch to "L" for LH mirror or to "R" for RH mirror.

Adjust the selected mirror up, down, left or right using the corresponding edges of the mirror adjusting pad.

Folding Mirrors

Manual folding (Russia only)
For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Power folding
**Warning**

Always keep your mirrors properly adjusted, and use them while driving to increase your visibility of objects and other vehicles around you. Do not drive while either outside rearview mirror is folded back.

---

**Caution**

Do not operate mirror continuous while the engine is not running. This will discharge the battery.

---

**Heated Mirrors**

Operated by pressing the button. Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a few minutes or by pressing the button again.

---

**Interior Mirrors**

**Manual Rearview Mirror**

To reduce dazzle, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

---

**Warning**

Your view through the mirror may lose some clarity when it is adjusted for night vision.

(Continued)
Warning (Continued)

Take special care with using your inside rearview mirror when it is adjusted for night vision. Failure to ensure a clear rear view while driving may result in a collision causing damage to your vehicle or other property, and/or personal injury.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

Electro-chromic mirror

Your vehicle may be equipped with Electro-Chromic Mirror(ECM), which automatically reduces glare from vehicles behind you providing uniform light levels to your eyes.

To turn the ECM ON, press the button on the mirror cover. The indicator light will be illuminated. The ignition switch must be in the ON position.

To turn the ECM OFF, press the button again.

Caution

There are two light sensors which detect ambient light level and glare from vehicles behind you. Do not cover the sensors or hang items on the EC mirror. Doing so may limit the ECM operation and you may have no benefit from it.
Windows

Power Windows

⚠️ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.

Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Power windows can be operated with ignition ON.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Operation

You may operate the power windows when the ignition switch is ON by using the power window switches on each door panel.

To open the window, press down on the switch.

To close the window, lift up on the switch.

⚠️ Warning

Body parts outside vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of body inside vehicle.

Children can operate and become entrapped in power windows.

Do not leave your keys or unattended children in your car.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of power windows.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.
2-20  Keys

Auto down

The driver’s window has an auto down function.

To lower the window, press down firmly, then release the switch. The window will open automatically until it is fully open. To stop the window while it is opening, press the switch again.

To raise the window, pull up and hold the switch. To stop the window, release the switch.

Auto up/down

The driver’s window has an auto up/down function.

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch fully down. To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch fully up. In automatic operation, the window will fully open or close even if you let go of the switch.

To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or depress and release the switch to the opposite direction of the movement.

Anti-pinch function

In case there is an obstacle detection while the driver’s window is closed automatically, the window will be opened automatically 11cm at least for safety.

⚠️ Warning

Anti-pinch function may not operate after six consecutive times operation. Do not operate the window switch with no purpose.

Child safety system for rear windows

Press switch 📐 to deactivate rear power windows.
To activate press again.

**Heated Rear Window**

Heated rear window and windscreen wiper de-icer are operated by pressing the button.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a few minutes or by pressing the button again.

**Caution**

Do not use sharp instruments or abrasive window cleaners on your windscreen or rear window.

Do not scratch or damage the defroster wires when you clean or work around the windscreen or rear window.

**Warning**

Do not place the sun visor in such a manner that it obscures visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

**Keys 2-21**

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.
2-22 Keys

Roof
Sunroof

Sunroof

⚠️ Warning
Take care when operating the sunroof. There is risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Sunroof can be operated with ignition ON.

Open/Close
To open the sunroof, pull weakly the switch backward. It will manually open as a first step.

When you pull strongly the switch backward then it will be automatically and fully opened (Second Step).

To close the Sunroof, keep pushing the switch forward or downward until it will be fully closed (only, manual operation)

To tilt the sunroof up, press and hold the switch upward.

To tilt the sunroof down, press and hold the switch downward.

Please release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

Note: The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened when the ignition key is in the LOCK position or out of the ignition.

⚠️ Caution
Periodically inspect the guide rail for dirt and clean if any dirt is accumulated. If there is any dirt around the rubber of the sunroof, noise can be produced while operating the sunroof.

Sunblind
The sunblind is operated manually.

Close or open the sunblind by sliding.
When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

⚠️ Warning

Body parts outside vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of body inside vehicle. Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of sunroof.
Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
- Head Restraints ........... 3-1
- Active Head Restraints .... 3-3

Front Seats
- Seat Position ............... 3-3
- Seat Adjustment .......... 3-4
- Power Seat Adjustment .... 3-5
- Heated Front Seats ........ 3-6
- Folding Seat-back .......... 3-6

Rear Seats
- Rear Seats .................. 3-8
- Heated Rear Seats .......... 3-12

Safety Belts
- Safety Belts ................. 3-12
- Three-Point Safety Belt .... 3-14
- Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy ........... 3-15

Airbag System
- Airbag System .............. 3-16
- Front Airbag System ........ 3-17

Side Airbag System .......... 3-18
Curtain Airbag System ........ 3-19
Airbag On-Off Switch ........ 3-20

Child Restraints
- Child Restraint Systems .... 3-21
- Child Restraint Installation Locations ............ 3-23
- ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems ................. 3-25
- Top Tether Child Restraint Systems .............. 3-27

Head Restraints

Position

⚠️ Warning

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position. Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision. Make sure that the head restraint readjusted before driving.
3-2 Seats and Restraints

The middle of the head restraint should be at eye level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

**Height adjustment**
Pull up the head restraints in order to adjust the position upward. Push down the head restraints while pressing the release button in order to adjust the position downward.

**Horizontal adjustment**
To tilt the front head restraints,
1. Place it in its upright position by pushing it forward fully and releasing it.
2. Push the head restraint forward carefully until it is adjusted to the desired position.
Active Head Restraints
In the event of a rear-end impact, the active head restraints at front seats automatically tilt forwards. The head is more effectively supported by the head restraint and the risk of injuries caused by hyperextension in the cervical vertebrae area is reduced.

Front Seats
Seat Position

⚠️ Warning
Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

- Sit with your buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that your legs are slightly angled when touching the pedals. Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Sit with your shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest angle so that you can easily reach the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between your shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not tilt the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum angle of approx. 25°.
- Adjust the steering wheel.
  See Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2.
- Set the seat high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and on all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between your head and the headlining. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
3-4 Seats and Restraints

- Adjust the head restraint. See Head Restraints on page 3-1.
- Adjust the height of the seat belt. See "Height adjustment" under Three-Point Seat belt on page 3-14.

Seat Adjustment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>! Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not sit nearer than 25 cm (10in) to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>! Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Seat positioning

To move seat forward or backward, pull the lever and slide seat to desired position. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Seat backrests

Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the seat to engage audibly.

**Note:** Do not lean on seat when adjusting.

Seat height

Pumping the lever on the outside of the seat cushion until the seat cushion is adjusted to the desired position. To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

**Seat lumbar support**

To increase or decrease the driver's seat lumbar support, move the lever forward or rearward.

---

**Power Seat Adjustment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. Driver could lose control of the vehicle and injury or property damage could result.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Seat slide adjustment**

To move the seat forward or backward, move and hold the switch forward or backward. When the seat-back reaches the desired position, release the switch.

**Seat height adjustment**

To adjust the height of the front or rear part of the seat cushion, push the front or rear part of the switch up or down. When the seat-back reaches the desired position, release the switch.
3-6 Seats and Restraints

Seat reclining adjustment

To tilt seat-back forward or backward, move and hold the upper part of the switch forward or backward.

When the seat-back reaches the desired position, release the switch.

Heated Front Seats

The seat heater switches are located below the centre console box. To warm the seat:

1. Turn the ignition key on.
2. Press the seat heater switch that you want to warm. Indicator in the button will be illuminated.

To turn off the seat heater, press the switch again. Indicator in the button will go out.

Caution

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Folding Seat-back

Passenger's seat folding

Caution

If you fold the seat-back forward to carry longer objects, such as skis, be sure any such cargo is not near an airbag.

In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure object away from the area in which an airbag would inflate.
Caution

Things you put on this seat-back can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Remove or secure all items before driving.

To fold the passenger's seat-back, do the following:
1. Lower the head restraint all the way.
2. Pull up and hold the lever under the front of the seat to slide the seat as far back as it will go and release the lever.
3. Lift the recliner lever, located on the outboard side of the seat, up fully and fold the seat-back forward until it stops in the folded position.

To raise the passenger's seat-back, do the following:
1. Lift the seat-back and push to original position.
2. Latch the seat-back into place by pushing on the top of the seat-back.
3. Pull the seat-back forward again to make sure the seat-back is properly latched.

Caution

If the seat-back is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash.

Caution (Continued)

That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seat back to ensure it is locked.

(Continued)
3-8 Seats and Restraints

Rear Seats

Folding rear seat-back

⚠️ Warning

Do not stack luggage or other cargo higher than the front seats.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seat-backs while the vehicle is in motion.

Your vehicle has separate areas designed specifically for carrying cargo or passengers.

Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seat-back can be thrown about within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

Serious injuries or death can result.

⚠️ Caution

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold down the rear seat-backs separately:

1. Ensure all three of the seat belts are unbuckled and the front seat-backs are not reclined.
2. Push the head restraints fully down.
3. Lift the lever located on the top of the seat-back to release the seat-back.
4. Fold the rear seat-back forward and down.
To return a rear seat-back to its original position:

1. Hook the seat belts to the retaining guide to make sure the seat belts are not pinched.
2. Lift the rear seat-back and push to original position.
3. Unhook the seat belts from the retaining guide.
4. Latch the seat-back into place by pushing on the top of the seat-back.
5. Pull the seat-back forward again to make sure the seat-back is properly latched.

**Warning**

Ensure that the rear seat-backs are all the way back and locked in position before operating the vehicle with passengers in the back seat.

(Continued)

To tilt the seat-backs, lift the lever on top of the rear seat-back until the seat-back is adjusted to the desired position.

**Double folding rear seat (7 seater only)**

**Warning**

Do not stack luggage or other cargo higher than the front seats. Do not allow passengers to sit on rear compartment when the rear seats are folded forward. Unrestrained luggage or passengers in rear compartment can be thrown about within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

The rear seat-backs can be partially reclined.
3-10 Seats and Restraints

⚠️ Warning

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts.
Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.
When double folding or unfolding, make sure the seat belt buckles are not pinched by the seat.
Serious injuries or death can result.

For third row seating entry or exit, do the following:
1. Ensure all three of the seat belts are unbuckled and the front seat-backs are not reclined.
2. Push the head restraints fully down.
3. Pull the lever forward on the outside of the seat-back and fold the seat-back.
4. The seat will tumble forward automatically and air-pressurised support rods will hold the seats folded.

To return the rear seat to its original position:
1. Hook the seat belts to the retaining guide to make sure the seat belts are not pinched.
2. Guide the rear seat cushion down.
3. Lock the rear seat cushion on the floor.
   Make sure that the rear seat cushion is securely latched by pulling it up and down.
4. Return the rear seat-back to its original position. Make sure that the seat-back is securely latched by pulling it back and forth.

5. Unhook the seat belts from the retaining guide.

**Warning**
Do not place the legs or other body parts on the floor under rear seat cushion when guiding the rear seat cushion down. Serious injuries can result.

**Caution**
Do not pull the lever when the seat-back is folded. This operation can cause damage to the lever or related parts.

Folding the third row seat

To fold down the third row seat-backs:
1. Ensure the seat belts are unbuckled.
2. Lift the lever on the back of the each seat-back.
3. Seat-back seat-back forward and fold the seat-back.
3-12 Seats and Restraints

To return the rear seat to its original position:

1. Raise the seat-back to its original position. Make sure that the seat-back is securely latched by pulling it back and forth.
2. Push the head restraint backward to its original position.

Heated Rear Seats

The rear seat heater switch is located on the each rear door panel. To warm the seat:

1. Turn the ignition key on.
2. Press the seat heater switch that you want to warm to heat the left or right outboard seat cushion and seat-back.

Indicator in the button will be illuminated.

To turn off the seat heater, press the switch again. Indicator in the button will go out.

Safety Belts

Seat belts

The belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle for the safety of the occupants.

⚠️ Warning

Fasten safety belt before each trip.

(Continued)
Warning (Continued)

In the event of an accident, people not wearing safety belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are only designed for use by one person at a time. They are not suitable for people younger than 12 years of age or shorter than 150 cm (5 ft).

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt tensioners replaced by a repairer.

Note: Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Seat belt reminder . See Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-17.

Front seat occupants
Each front seat is equipped with adjustable seat and seat-back with height-adjustable head restraint, three point lap-and-shoulder seat belts, and a supplemental restraint system (air bag).

Rear seat occupants
The rear seat is equipped with two outboard seating positions and a centre seating position featuring three-point lap-and-shoulder seat belts.

Each outboard seating positions are equipped with child restraint lower anchors and the top tether anchors located on the back of the rear seat-back.

See Child Restraint Installation Locations on page 3-23.

Third row seat occupants
The third row seat is equipped with two seating positions featuring three-point lap-and-shoulder seat belts.

Belt force limiters
In the front seats, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Belt tensioners
In the event of a head-on or side or rear-end collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts are tightened.

Warning
Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts or belt buckles) can trigger the belt tensioners with risk of injury.
3-14 Seats and Restraints

Deployment of the belt tensioners is indicated by illumination of control indicator  

See Airbag and Seat belt Tensioner Light on page 5-18.

Triggered belt tensioners must be replaced by a repairer. Belt tensioners can only be triggered once.

Note: Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt tensioners.

Do not make any modifications to belt tensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

Three-Point Safety Belt Fitting

Withdraw belt from reel, guide it untwisted across the body and engage the latch plate in the buckle.

Tension the lap belt regularly while driving by tugging the shoulder belt.

Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

⚠️ Warning

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.
Seats and Restraints 3-15

Height adjustment

1. Press button.
2. Adjust height and engage.
Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm.

⚠️ Warning
Do not adjust while driving.

Removing

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belt use during pregnancy

⚠️ Warning
The belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, pregnant women are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear seat belts.

In addition, when a seat belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the unborn child will be safe in a crash.
3-16 Seats and Restraints

To provide maximum protection, a pregnant woman should wear a three-point seat belt. She should wear the lap portion of the belt as low as possible throughout her pregnancy.

Airbag System

Airbag system

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems. When triggered the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠️ Warning

If handled improperly the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. If you are sitting too close to the airbag, it can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbag while the vehicle is in motion.

The airbag may cause facial or body scratch, injury by broken glasses or getting a burn by explosion while airbag is deployed.

Note: The airbag systems and belt tensioner control electronics are located in the central console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not stick anything on the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a repairer.
Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

In the event of airbag deployment have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, all panelling parts, the door seals, the handles and the seats removed by a repairer.

When an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise and smoke. These conditions are normal and are not dangerous but in case it may stimulate skin of the passenger. If the stimulation is continued, contact a doctor.

---

**Danger**

Never allow children or infants and pregnant women and the old and the weak sit in the front passenger seats fitted with airbags.

(Continued)

---

**Danger (Continued)**

Furthermore, do not drive with a baby seat fitted thereon. In case of an accident, the impact from the inflated airbag can cause facial injury or death.

---

**Caution**

If the vehicle is impacted by bumps or objects on unpaved roads or pavements, the air bag may inflate. Drive slowly on the surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

Control indicator 🚨 for airbag systems.

See Airbag and Seat belt Tensioner Light on page 5-18.

---

**Front Airbag System**

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of an accident of a certain severity in the depicted area. The ignition must be ON.
3-18 Seats and Restraints

The forward movement of the front seat occupants is retarded, thereby considerably reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head.

⚠️ Warning

- Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.
- See Seat Position on page 3-3.
- Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

(Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning (Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wear the seat belt properly fastened. Only then the airbag is able to protect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Side Airbag System

The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest.

This can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of an accident of a certain severity. The ignition must be ON.

The risk of injury to the thorax and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision is considerably reduced.

⚠️ Warning

- Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Note: Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for your vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.
Warning

Children who are seated in close proximity to a side airbag may be at risk of serious or fatal injury if the airbag deploys, especially if the child's head, neck, or chest is close to the airbag at the time of deployment.

Never let your child lean on the door or close to the side airbag module.

Curtain Airbag System

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of an accident of a certain severity. The ignition must be ON.

Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.
3-20 Seats and Restraints

Airbag On-Off Switch

Front airbag system for the front passenger seat have to be deactivated if a child restraint system is to be fitted on this seat. The curtain airbag system, the belt tensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.

Front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a lock on the side of the instrument panel, visible when the front passenger door is open.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deactivate front passenger airbag system when the front passenger seat is occupied by a child.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate front passenger airbag system when an adult is on the front passenger seat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the ignition key to choose the position:

- OFF = front passenger airbags are deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator illuminates continuously. A child restraint system can be installed in accordance with the chart.
- ON = front passenger airbags are activated. No child restraint systems can be installed.

As long as the control indicator is not illuminated, the airbag systems for the front passenger seat will inflate in the event of a collision.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Status remains until the next change. Control indicator for airbag deactivation.

See Airbag On-Off Light on page 5-18.
Child Restraints

Child Restraint Systems

We recommend the GM child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

⚠️ Warning

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

⚠️ Warning

WARNING—EXTREME HAZARD

(Continued)

⚠️ Warning

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

⚠️ Warning

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag systems for the front passenger seat must be deactivated; if not, the triggering of the airbags poses a risk of fatal injury to the child.

This is especially the case if rear-facing child restraint systems are used on the front passenger seat.
3-22 Seats and Restraints

Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Children under the age of 12 years that are shorter than 150 cm (5 ft) are only allowed to travel in a restraint system that is suitable for the child. Suitable are restraint systems that comply with ECE 44-03 or ECE 44-04. Since a proper position of the belt is rarely possible with a child that is shorter than 150 cm (5 ft), we strongly advise the use of an appropriate child restraint system, even though this might, due to the age of the child, no longer be legally binding.

Never carry a child while travelling in the vehicle. The child will become too heavy to hold in the event of a collision.

When transporting children, use the child restraint systems suitable for the child's weight.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct.

Only allow children to enter and exit the vehicle at the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a safety belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Note: Do not stick anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Please ensure that infants and children are seated in the rear seats using child restraints.

Until the children can use seat belts, please select a child restraint suitable for its age and make sure the child wears it. Please see the instructions on the relevant products for child restraints.
Child Restraint Installation Locations

Permissible options for fitting a child restraint system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight class</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On the seats in the third row</th>
<th>On the seats in the third row</th>
<th>On outboard seats in the second row</th>
<th>On centre seat in the second row</th>
<th>On the seats in the third row</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U1</td>
<td>U+</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0+</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U1</td>
<td>U+</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U1</td>
<td>U+</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group II</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group III</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1: Only if front passenger seat airbag systems are deactivated. If the child restraint system is being secured using a three-point seat belt, adjust the seat backrest angle to the most forward position and ensure that vehicle seat belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point.

+: Seat available with ISOFIX and Top-Tether mounting brackets.

U: Universal suitability in conjunction with three-point seat belt.

X: No child restraint system permitted in this weight class.
## 3-24 Seats and Restraints

### Permissible options for fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight Class</th>
<th>Size Class</th>
<th>Fixture</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On outboard seats in the second row</th>
<th>On centre seat in the second row</th>
<th>On the seats in the third row</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 0</td>
<td>up to 10 kg</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0+</td>
<td>up to 13 kg</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I</td>
<td>9 to 18 kg</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IL:** Suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type.

**IUF:** Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

**X:** No ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this weight class.

### ISOFIX size class and seat device

**A - ISO/F3:** Forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
B - ISO/F2: Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

B1 - ISO/F2X: Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

C - ISO/R3: Rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 13 kg.

D - ISO/R2: Rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 13 kg.

E - ISO/R1: Rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

In the past, child restraints have been attached to a vehicle's seat by seat belts.

As a result, child restraints were often installed incorrectly or too loosely to adequately protect your child.

We now equip your vehicle with ISOFIX low anchorages at the two rear outboard seating positions and with top tether anchorages in the rear seat backward allowing child restraints to be attached to the rear seats.

To install a child restraint which comes equipped with ISOFIX low and top tether anchorage attachments, follow the instructions supplied with your child restraint.

Please take the time to carefully read and follow all of the instructions on the following pages and the instructions supplied with your child restraint.

Your child's safety depends on it!

If you have questions, or any doubts whether you have installed your child restraint properly, contact the child restraint manufacturer. If you are still having trouble installing the child restraint in your vehicle, we recommend that you consult an authorised repairer.
3-26 Seats and Restraints

Installation of ISOFIX child restraint systems

1. Select one of the rear outboard seating positions for installation of the child restraint.

2. Locate the two lower anchor positions.
   The location of each lower anchor is identified with a circular marking on the lower edge of the rear seat-back.

3. Make sure there are no foreign objects around lower anchors, including seat belt buckles or seat belts. Foreign objects can interfere with the proper latching of the child restraint to the anchors.

4. Place the child restraint on the seat over the two lower anchors and attach it to the anchors following the instructions supplied with the child restraint.

5. Adjust and tighten the child restraint according to the instructions supplied with the child restraint.

Note: Since a seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle, be sure and check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.

Caution

Unused child restraint system could move forward.
Remove child restraint system if not in use, or secure it with seat belt.

Warning

Use all ISOFIX low and top tether anchorages for their designed purpose only.
ISOFIX low and top tether anchorages are designed only to hold child restraints which come equipped with low and top anchorage attachments.
Do not use ISOFIX low and top tether anchorages to hold adult seat belts, harnesses, or other items of equipment in your vehicle.
Using ISOFIX low and top tether anchorages to hold adult seat belts, harnesses, or other items or equipment in your vehicle will not

(Continued)
Warning (Continued)
provide adequate protection in the case of a collision and could result in injuries or even death.

⚠️ Warning
Child restraint system placed in the front seat could cause serious injury or death.

Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a front passenger air bag.

A child in a rear-facing child restraint installed in the front seat can be seriously injured if the front passenger air bag inflates.

Secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.

(Continued)

A front-facing child restraint should be secured in the rear seat whenever possible.
If installed in the front passenger seat, adjust the seat as far back as it will go.

⚠️ Caution
Full size rear facing child seats may not be suitable for installation. Contact your retailer for information regarding suitable child restraint systems.

Installation of child restraints with ISOFIX low and top tether anchorage attachments.

Top Tether Child Restraint Systems

To access the top tether anchor points, do the following:
1. Remove the foreign objects around the top tether anchor.
Remove the luggage compartment cover.
3-28 Seats and Restraints

2. Attach the clip on the child restraint's tether strap to the top tether anchor, making sure to remove any twists in the tether strap.

   If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the head restraint.

   If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the head restraint and in between the head restraint posts.

3. Tighten the child restraint's tether strap according to the instructions supplied with the child restraint.

4. Push and pull on the child restraint after installation to be sure the child restraint is secure.

⚠️ Warning

Make sure the clip on the child restraint's tether strap is properly attached to the top tether anchorage.

Incorrect attachment could render the tether strap and top tether anchorage ineffective.
Storage

Storage Compartments
Instrument Panel Storage . . . . 4-1
Glove Box . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-2
Cupholders . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-3
Sunglasses Storage . . . . . . 4-4
Underseat Storage . . . . . . 4-4
Centre Console Storage . . . . 4-4
Roof Panelling . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-5

Luggage/Load Locations
Luggage Compartment . . . . 4-6

Additional Storage Features
Load Compartment Cover . . . . 4-6

Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System . . . . . . 4-7

Information on Loading the Vehicle
Information on Loading the Vehicle . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 4-8

The storages are located in the instrument panel. It is used for small articles, etc.
4-2 Storage

Card holder

You can use the card holder by inserting a card into slot.

Coin storage

To open the coin storage, pull the handle on the coin storage door toward you.
To close the coin storage, firmly push the coin storage door shut.

Glove Box

Open the glove box by pulling the bottom of the handle upward and the glove box lamp will be turned on. Close the glove box with a firm push and the glove box lamp will be turned off.
Storage 4-3

The inner partition can be removed if you want to store larger items. After taking inner partition off, keep it in the left side groove of the glove box.

**Warning**

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glovebox door closed while driving.

Cupholders

The cup holders are located in the centre console and in the second row seat armrest.

To use the rear cup holder, push the button above the cup holder. The rear cup holder will pop out automatically.

**Warning**

Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.
4-4 Storage

Sunglasses Storage

Fold down to open.

⚠️ Caution

Do not use for storing heavy objects.

Underseat Storage

To use the front passenger seat undertray, pull up on the end of the tray and pull it toward the instrument panel. Push the tray toward the seat to return it to its original position.

Centre Console Storage

To open the console box, pull up on the lever and lift lid.

To close the console box, lower the lid and push it down until it latches.
You can use another storage by pressing and pushing the lever on the cup holders.

Roof Panelling

Assist grip with coat hook

Your vehicle has assist grips above the front seat passenger's door and the rear doors. The grip above each rear door includes coat hook.

To use the assist grips, pull down and hold it. The grips will swing up automatically when releasing it.

Passengers can use the grips for assistance in entering / exiting the vehicle, or for hand-holds during spirited driving.

⚠️ Caution

Hanging items on your vehicle's assist grips can obstruct the driver's view.

Do not hang anything on the assist grips, unless they are equipped with a coat hook.

Obstructing the driver's view can lead to an accident resulting in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle or other property.
4-6 Storage

Luggage/Load Locations

Luggage Compartment

Under floor storage

There is storage under the luggage compartment floor. To access the floor storage, pull floor mat handle upward.

Caution

Do not allow items in the storage to extend above the top of the storage. Otherwise, the storage or luggage floor may be damaged.

Rear storage

In the both sides of the luggage compartment floor, there are floor side trays.

Additional Storage Features

Load Compartment Cover

Luggage or other cargo placed in the luggage compartment can be hidden from view by a luggage compartment cover.

To operate the cover, pull the handle of the cover toward you and then insert the retainer into the slot located on both sides of the tailgate openings.
To remove the cover, release the handle after pulling it toward you a little. The cover retracts automatically.

# Roof Rack System

## Roof rack

The roof rack can be used to conveniently carry additional cargo, or bulky items, such as bicycles, which are better carried outside than inside. The roof rack has side rails attached to the roof. Consult an authorised repairer for details and regulations on driving with a loaded roof rack.

Ensure that the load is evenly distributed over the side or cross rails. The roof surface must not be loaded.

A loaded luggage carrier alters the vehicle's centre of gravity. Drive carefully when in crosswinds and do not drive at high speeds.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you are driving, check frequently to make sure your cargo are securely fastened.

## Warning

If you try to carry something on top of your vehicle that is longer or wider than the roof rack, the wind can catch it as you drive along. This can cause you to lose control. What you are carrying could be torn off violently, and this could cause you or other drivers to have a collision, and of course damage your vehicle.

Never carry something longer or wider than the roof rack on top of your vehicle.

A loaded roof rack changes the vehicle's centre of gravity. Do not drive at high speeds. Take precautions when driving in crosswinds.

Failure to follow this caution can result in vehicle damage and personal injury.

(Continued)
4-8 Storage

Information on Loading the Vehicle

Information on loading the vehicle

- Heavy objects in the tailgate should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure the backrests are securely engaged. If objects can be stacked, the heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Secure objects in tailgate to prevent sliding.
- When transporting objects in the tailgate, the backrests of the rear seats must not be angled forward.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.

- Do not place any objects on the tailgate cover or the instrument panel, do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open tailgate.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (See Identification Plate on page 12-1) and the kerb weight.

For the kerb weight in detail, refer to the technical data section.
Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.
4-10 Storage

NOTES
# Instruments and Controls

## Controls
- Steering Wheel Adjustment ... 5-2
- Steering Wheel Controls ... 5-3
- Horn ... 5-3
- Windscreen Wiper/Washer ... 5-3
- Rear Window Wiper/Washer ... 5-3
- Headlamp Washer ... 5-7
- Clock ... 5-7
- Power Sockets ... 5-8

## Warning Lights
- Speedometer ... 5-9
- Mileometer ... 5-9
- Rev Counter ... 5-12
- Fuel Gauge ... 5-13
- Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge ... 5-13
- Service Display ... 5-14
- Transmission Display ... 5-17
- Indicator ... 5-17
- Seat Belt Reminders ... 5-17
- Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light ... 5-18

## Information Displays
- Driver Information Centre (DIC) ... 5-27

## Airbag On-Off Light ... 5-18
- Charging System Light ... 5-19
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp ... 5-19
- Service Vehicle Soon Light ... 5-19
- Brake System Warning Light ... 5-20
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light ... 5-21
- All-Wheel-Drive Light ... 5-21
- Descent Control System Light ... 5-21
- Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning Light ... 5-22
- Ultrasonic Parking Sensor Light ... 5-22
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light ... 5-22
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light ... 5-22
- Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light ... 5-22
- Pre-Heat Light ... 5-22
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Light ... 5-23
- Diesel Particulate Filter Light ... 5-23
- Engine Oil Pressure Light ... 5-23
- Low Engine Oil Level Light ... 5-24
- Change Engine Oil Light ... 5-24
- Fuel Economy Light ... 5-24
- Low Fuel Warning Light ... 5-24
- Water in Fuel Warning Light ... 5-24
- Security Light ... 5-25
- Immobiliser Light ... 5-25
- Reduced Engine Power Light ... 5-25
- Apply Foot brake Light ... 5-25
- Main-Beam On Light ... 5-25
- Front Fog Lamp Light ... 5-25
- Rear Fog Lamp Light ... 5-25
- Tail lamp Indicator Light ... 5-26
- Cruise Control Light ... 5-26
- Trailer Indicator Light ... 5-26
- Bonnet Ajar Light ... 5-26
- Door Ajar Light ... 5-26
5-2 Instruments and Controls

Vehicle Messages
Vehicle Messages ............... 5-28
Brake System Messages .... 5-28
Key and Lock Messages .... 5-28
Transmission Messages .... 5-29

Trip Computer
Trip Computer ................. 5-29

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary.

⚠️ Caution

If strong impact delivers to steering column axle direction when the steering wheel is adjusted or the lever is locked, it may cause damage to the parts related to steering wheel.

⚠️ Caution

If the steering wheel is turned until it reached the end of its travel, and is held in that position for more than 10 seconds, damage may occur to the power steering system and there may be loss of power steering assist.
Steering Wheel Controls

The climate control system and the cruise control can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

See Electronic Climate Control System on page 8-13.

Horn

Press 🎉.

Windscreen Wiper/Washer

windscreen wiper

To operate the windscreen wipers, turn the ignition ON and move the windscreen wiper / washer lever upward.

HI: Continuous wipe, fast speed.
LO: Continuous wipe, slow speed.
INT: Intermittent operation.
OFF: System off.
MIST: Misting function.
5-4 Instruments and Controls

Misting function
To operate the windscreen wipers once in case of light rain or mist, lightly press the windscreen wiper/washer lever down and release it.
The lever will return automatically to its normal position when released.
The wipers will operate through one cycle.

⚠️ Caution
Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.
Do not operate the windscreen wipers when the windscreen is dry or obstructed, as with snow or ice. Using the wipers on an obstructed windscreen can damage the wiper blades, wiper motor, and glass.

Caution (Continued)
Check blades are not frozen to windows before operating in cold weather. Wiper operation while blade is frozen can damage wiper motor.

Automatic wipers with rain sensor
The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the windscreen wipers.
To operate the windscreen wipers automatically, move the windscreen wiper/washer lever toward the AUTO position.
The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by turning the band of the windscreen wiper/washer lever up or down.
To turn the system off, move the windscreen wiper/washer lever toward the OFF position.

⚠️ Caution
Do not switch on the windscreen wipers or set them to automatic operation with rain sensor in car washes. This could damage the wiper blades or wiper system.
The windscreen wipers operate once to check the system when the ignition switch is turned to ACC while the wiper lever is in the AUTO position.

So as to ensure proper operation of the rain sensor, the sensor field must be free from dust and dirt. Vehicles with rain sensor can be identified by the sensor field near the top of the windscreen.

The wipers are not operated when select lever of automatic transaxle is in "N" position and vehicle speed is lower than 5 km/h.

**windscreen washer**

Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper swipes for one stroke.

**Caution**

Do not operate the windscreen washer continuously for more than some seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This can cause the washer motor to overheat resulting in costly repairs.

**Warning**

Do not spray washer fluid on the windscreen in freezing weather. Using washer fluid and wipers may cause an accident in freezing weather because washer fluid can form ice on a frozen windscreen and obstruct your vision.
Rear Window Wiper/Washer

To operate the tailgate wiper, turn the ignition ACC or ON and rotate the end of the windscreen wiper/washer lever upward. The tailgate wiper operates in the following three positions:

- **OFF**: System off. Default position.
- **INT**: Intermittent operation.
- **LO**: Continuous wipe, slow speed.

Washer

To spray washer fluid on the tailgate window, press the button at the end of the lever until the washers begin. When you release the button, the washers will stop, but the wipers will continue to wipe about three times.

⚠️ Caution

Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.

Do not operate the tailgate window wiper when the tailgate window is dry or obstructed, as with snow or ice.

Using the wiper on an obstructed window can damage the wiper blades, wiper motor, and glass.

Check blade is not frozen to window before operating in cold weather. Wiper operation while blade is frozen can damage wiper motor.

Do not spray washer fluid on the tailgate window in freezing weather.

(Continued)
Caution (Continued)

Warm the tailgate window before you operate the tailgate window washer. Washer fluid can form ice on a frozen tailgate window and obstruct your vision. Do not operate the tailgate window washer continuously for more than some seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This can cause the washer motor to overheat resulting in costly repairs.

Rear smart wiper

To achieve a clear vision in the rain, the rear wiper will operate automatically when you select reverse gear while the front wiper is operating.

Headlamp Washer

Your vehicle may have headlamp washers. The headlamp washers clear debris from the headlamp lenses. To wash the headlamps, press the washer button located on the left side of the instrument panel when the headlamps are turned on. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the headlamps. Then the headlamp washer system is disabled for about 2 minutes. If washer fluid level is low, the washer system cannot be operated for about 4 minutes after spraying.

Clock

When the ignition is ACC or ON, the digital clock displays the time. The digital clock has three adjusting buttons.

H: Hour button.
To advance 1 hour, press the H button.
5-8  Instruments and Controls

To advance more than 1 hour, press and hold the H button until you reach the correct hour.

M: Minute button.
To advance 1 minute, press the M button.
To advance more than 1 minute, press and hold the M button until you reach the correct minute.

S: Set button.
To reset the time to the nearest hour, press the S button.
If you press this button when the time is between 8:00 and 8:29 for example, the display will reset to 8:00.
If you press this button while the time is between 8:30 and 8:59 for example, the display will reset to 9:00.

Note: Remember to reset your vehicle’s clock each time you disconnect and then reconnect the battery or replace a fuse.

Power Sockets

A 12V power outlet is located in front of centre console, below the backward of centre console and on the left side of luggage compartment.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

With ignition off the power outlet is deactivated.

Additionally the power outlet is deactivated in case of low battery voltage.

⚠️ Caution

Do not connect any current delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the sockets by using unsuitable plugs.
Warning Lights

Speedometer

Type 1
Indicates vehicle speed.

Type 2

Mileometer

Type 1
The odometer shows how far your car has been driven in kilometres or miles.

There are independent trip odometer, which measure the distance your vehicle has travelled since you last reset this function.

To reset each trip meter to zero, press and hold the trip odometer button until it resets. The trip odometer button is located in the lower right area of the speedometer.
5-10 Instruments and Controls

The odometer, trip A and trip B can be switched by pressing the trip odometer button.

If your vehicle has a DIC in the middle of the cluster, the odometer, trip A, trip B and the personalisation setting (language or keyless locking) display in the DIC.

The odometer, trip A, trip B can be switched by pressing the button located in the lower left area of the speedometer.

On the odometer display, press and hold the button to enter the personalisation setting menu.

You can select the following order.
Each menu can be switched by pressing the button shortly.

- Language
- Keyless Locking Change
- Feature Settings Exit

**Note:** The vehicle should be in stationary condition with the select lever in P.

**Language**

Press the button a few seconds when language displays.

Press the button shortly, until the language is displayed to the desired language.

To select, press the button a few seconds.

**Keyless Locking Change**

Press the button a few seconds when Keyless Locking Change displays.

Each time you press the button shortly, the mode changes in the following order:

Off → On → No change → Off...

**Feature Settings Exit**

Press the button a few seconds when Feature Settings Exit displays to return the odometer.
5-12 Instruments and Controls

Rev Counter

<Petrol>

Type 1

Displays the engine revolutions per minute.

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

<Diesel>

Type 1

Type 2

⚠️ Caution

If the needle is in the warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine is at risk.
Instruments and Controls 5-13

**Fuel Gauge**

Displays the fuel level in the tank. Never run the tank dry. Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified tank capacity. Movement of the fuel within the fuel tank causes the fuel gauge pointer to move when you brake, accelerate or turn.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Before refuelling, stop vehicle and switch off the engine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge**

It indicates engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is ON.
5-14 Instruments and Controls

⚠️ Caution

Do not continue to drive your vehicle if the temperature gauge needle is in the red area of the gauge. This means your vehicle's engine is overheating.

Driving with an overheated engine can damage your vehicle.

Service Display

Control indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. The actual in the vehicle may differ from the description. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.
Control indicators in the instrument cluster
5-16 Instruments and Controls
Transmission Display

Type 1
It indicates the selected gear or transmission mode.

Type 2
If your vehicle has a DIC in the middle of the cluster, the selected gear or transmission mode display will be shown on the bottom of the DIC.

Indicator
◊ illuminates or flashes green.

Flashes
The control indicator flashes if an indicator or the hazard lights are activated.

If the green arrows don't flash when you signal a turn or push the hazard warning button, check the fuse and replace any that are not operating properly.

See Bulb Replacement on page 10-25
See Fuses on page 10-29
See Indicator Signals on page 6-5

Seat Belt Reminders
 })). for driver's seat illuminates or flashes.
Passenger's seat belt reminder indicator is located above the glove box.

Φ for front passenger seat illuminates or flashes, when seat is occupied.

When the ignition switched ON, the indicator light and warning chime comes on and stay for several seconds to remind fasten seat belts.

The light flashes until the seat belt is buckled.

If seat belt remains unbuckled when the vehicle is moving, lights and chime repeat.

If the seat belt is buckled, light and chime will go off.

See Three-Point Seat belt on page 3-14

Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light

Φ illuminates.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for about few seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after few seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the belt tensioner or in the airbag system. The systems may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Vehicle trouble or deployment of the belt tensioners or airbags may be indicated by continuous illumination of Φ

⚠️ Warning

Have the cause of the fault eliminated immediately by a repairer.

See Airbag System on page 3-16

Airbag On-Off Light

⚠️ for front passenger airbag illuminates.

When the control indicator illuminates the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

The control indicator is located above the glove box.

⚠️ for front passenger airbag illuminates.

See "Belt tensioners" under Seat belts on page 3-12

See Airbag System on page 3-16
Charging System Light

illuminates.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

**Illuminates when the engine is running**

Stop, switch off engine. Battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted.

Seek the assistance of a repairer.

**Malfunction Indicator Lamp**

illuminates.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

---

**Caution**

The indicator light signals that your vehicle has a problem that requires attention. Driving with the malfunction indicator light on can damage the emissions control system and can affect the fuel economy and drive ability of your vehicle.

Consult a repairer to repair the problem as soon as possible.

The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) will illuminate if a fault exists in the emission related components or related sub systems.

It will stay on as long as the Engine Control Module (ECM) detects the fault. If a severe misfire level is detected, the MIL will flash continuously. Severe misfire can cause catalytic converter damage.

The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) will also illuminate to indicate that there is a malfunction in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF).

If this happens, you should consult a repairer to repair the problem immediately.

See Diesel Fuel Filter on page 10-24

Your vehicle’s electronic system will switch to an emergency running programmer so you may continue to drive. However, you should consult a repairer to repair the problem as soon as possible.

If the MIL comes on briefly and then goes out again, this is normal and does not indicate a system fault.

**Service Vehicle Soon Light**

illuminates when the vehicle needs a service.

Have the vehicle checked by a repairer immediately.
5-20 Instruments and Controls

Brake System Warning Light

⚠️ illuminates.

When the parking brake is released the brake system warning light will remain illuminated if the brake fluid level is too low or if there is a brake system fault.

See Brake Fluid on page 10-21

**Warning**

Do not drive with the brake system warning lamp on.

This may mean your brakes are not working properly.

Driving with malfunctioning brakes can lead to a collision resulting in personal injuries and damage to your vehicle and other property.

Electric parking brake light

Parking brake status light

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake status light (P) comes on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by an authorised repairer.

The parking brake status light (P) comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, consult an authorised repairer.

Parking brake warning light

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake warning light

should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/START. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light comes on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible.

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), (P) comes on when the EPB switch is released without pressing the brake pedal. Always press the brake pedal before pressing the EPB switch to release the Electric Parking Brake.

See Parking Brake on page 9-18
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

Illuminate. Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator goes out. If the control indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation. See Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 9-17.

All-Wheel-Drive Light

Illuminate when the ignition is ON and goes out after about a few seconds. This light flashes when AWD system is temporarily disabled and illuminates to indicate that there is a malfunction in the AWD system.

Descent Control System Light

Illuminate. The green DCS light is DCS active indicator and the amber DCS light is DCS not ready & warning light. DCS active indicator illuminates (as green colour) when DCS is ready for use and flashes (as green colour) while DCS is operating by pressing the DCS button located on the centre of the instrument panel. DCS not ready & warning light works as the following:

- Flashes (as amber colour) to indicate that DCS is not ready for condition to operate due to the high temperature (about 350~400°C) of friction material (front pad) through severe or repeated braking. This light will disappear when the temperature of friction material (front pad) is lower than 350°C.
- Illuminates (as amber colour) to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system due to the high temperature (over 400°C) of friction material (front pad) through severe or repeated braking.
- This light also will disappear when temperature of friction material (front pad) is lower than 350°C.
- The flashing and illuminating of DCS not ready & warning light notify you that the friction material needs to cool down (drive your vehicle enough without braking as much as possible). Above temperature may differ somewhat according
5-22 Instruments and Controls

to vehicle condition or environment (season or outer temperature) or etc.

Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning Light
⚠️ illuminates.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.
If the indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the power steering.
Seek the assistance of a repairer.

Ultrasonic Parking Sensor Light
🅿️💡 illuminates.

- Fault due to sensors that are dirty
- Covered by ice or snow

- Outside ultrasonic waves interference

The source of interference is removed, the system will operate normally.
If the lamp does not go out, you have the cause of the fault in the system remedied by a repairer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light
🚦 illuminates or flashes.

This lamp flashes while ESC is operating and illuminates to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light
🌡️ illuminates.

This lamp tells you that the engine coolant has overheated.
If you have been operating your vehicle under normal driving conditions, you should pull off the road, stop your vehicle and let the engine idle for a few minutes.
If the lamp does not go out, you should turn the engine off and consult a repairer as soon as possible. We recommend that you consult an authorised repairer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light
🚦 illuminates or flashes.

Illuminates when the system is deactivated.

Pre-Heat Light
🌡️ illuminates.

Illuminates when preheating is activated. When the light goes out the engine can be started.
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Light

-yellow.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

If the light comes on while driving, the tyre pressure monitoring system has detected that one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

Stop the vehicle in safety place, check tyres and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure on the tyre inflation pressure label.

When the system detects a malfunction, the light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle.

The malfunction light comes on until the problem is corrected. Have the vehicle checked by a repairer.

Diesel Particulate Filter Light

-flashes. (Diesel only)

Flashes and a chime sounds if the diesel particle filter requires cleaning and previous driving conditions did not permit automatic cleaning.

It goes off when the self cleaning operation is complete.

See Diesel Particulate Filter on page 9-7

Engine Oil Pressure Light

-illuminates.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

**Caution**

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.

If the engine oil pressure warning lamp comes on while driving, pull off the road, stop the engine and check the oil level.

**Warning**

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

Do not remove the key until vehicle has come to a standstill, otherwise the steering column lock could engage unexpectedly.
5-24 Instruments and Controls

Check oil level before seeking the assistance of a repairer.

See Engine Oil on page 10-11

Low Engine Oil Level Light

illumínates when the ignition is ON and goes out after a few seconds.

This light illuminates when engine oil level is too low.
If engine oil level warning light comes on, check engine oil level and top up if necessary.

See Engine Oil on page 10-11

Change Engine Oil Light

illumínates when the ignition is ON and goes out after a few seconds.

Your vehicle may have an engine oil life system that lets you know when to change the engine oil.

When the change engine oil light comes on, it means that the engine oil needs to be changed.

Once the engine oil has been changed, the engine oil life system must be reset. After reset, the change engine oil light will go out.

See Engine Oil on page 10-11

Fuel Economy Light

For vehicles with the eco (fuel economy mode) light, it comes on when the eco (economy) switch, located on the centre console near the gear lever, is pressed. Press the switch again to turn off the light and exit the fuel saver mode.

For vehicles with petrol engine, the eco light will turn off when you move gear lever to manual mode.

Low Fuel Warning Light

illuminates.

Illuminates when level in fuel tank is too low.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not let your vehicle run out of fuel. This can damage the catalytic converter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Catalytic Converter on page 9-8

Water in Fuel Warning Light

It illuminates (diesel only) when the water level in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level.

Immediately drain the water from fuel filter.
The warning lamp will go off when draining is completed.

See Diesel Fuel Filter on page 10-24

**Security Light**

If your vehicle has additional anti-theft system related to Thatcham insurance, the anti-theft off indicator illuminates to indicate that you have disabled the intrusion and inclination sensor by pressing the button located on the headlining. If you press the button again, the indicator will go out.

See Anti-theft Alarm System on page 2-11

**Immobiliser Light**

 illuminates.

Illuminates when fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a repairer.

**Reduced Engine Power Light**

 illuminates.

It illuminates with the service vehicle soon light when the vehicle needs a service.

Pull off the road, stop the engine and restart after 10 seconds.

The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed.

Have the vehicle checked by a repairer immediately.

**Apply Foot brake Light**

 illuminates.

It illuminates when the EPB switch is released without pressing the brake pedal. Always press the brake pedal before pressing the EPB switch to release the Electric Parking Brake.

See Parking Brake on page 9-18

Also, it illuminates when the clutch pedal needs to be operated to restart the engine.

See Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature on page 9-4

**Main-Beam On Light**

 illuminates.

See Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer on page 6-3

**Front Fog Lamp Light**

 illuminates.

Illuminated when the front fog lamps are on.

See Front Fog Lamps on page 6-5

**Rear Fog Lamp Light**

 illuminates.

Illuminated when the rear fog lamps are on.

See Rear Fog Lamps on page 6-6
5-26 Instruments and Controls

Tail lamp Indicator Light

\[ \text{illuminates.} \]
Illuminated when the tail lamps are on.

Cruise Control Light

\[ \text{illuminates when the cruise control systems are on.} \]
It will go out when the cruise control system is turned off.

Trailer Indicator Light

\[ \text{illuminates when the trailer is connected to your vehicle. It will go out when the trailer is disconnected.} \]

Bonnet Ajar Light

It illuminates when the bonnet is open.
See Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature on page 9-4

Door Ajar Light

\[ \text{illuminates when a door is open.} \]

Tailgate ajar light

\[ \text{illuminates when the tailgate is open or not securely latched.} \]
Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)
5-28 Instruments and Controls

1. FATC (Fully Automatic Temperature Control) display panel
2. Outside temperature
3. Trip computer
4. Compass
5. Dual zone

The DIC is the Driver Information Centre that displays the trip computer, display panel for automatic temperature control, outside temperature, compass information and dual zone when ignition switch is ON.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC (in the middle of the cluster) indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

Brake System Messages

Press Brake To Start Engine
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if you try to start the engine without having the brake pressed.

Press Clutch To Start Engine
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if you try to start the engine without having the clutch pressed.

Key and Lock Messages

Accessory Mode Active
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays when the accessory mode is active.

Electronic Key Not Detected
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if the vehicle does not detect the presence of a transmitter when you have attempted to start the vehicle or a vehicle door has just closed.

Electronic key Not Detected Restart Allowed
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays when the keyless access transmitter is not detected inside the vehicle while you are trying to turn the ignition off.
Rotate Control To Off Position
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays as a reminder to turn the ignition off.

Service Keyless Start System
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays when there is a problem with this feature.

Transmission Messages

Shift To Park
If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if the vehicle is not in P (Park) while the engine is being turned off.

Trip Computer
Trip computer provides the driver with driving information such as driving distance for remaining fuel, average fuel consumption, average speed and driving time.

Each time you press the MODE button, the display changes in the following order:
Driving distance for remaining fuel → Average speed → Driving time → Average fuel consumption → Driving distance for remaining fuel.

To reset average speed or driving time or average fuel consumption, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

To change the distance unit, do the following:
1. Press the SET button for more than 2 seconds. The temperature unit will flash.
2. Press the SET button again. The distance unit will flash.

3. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to change the distance unit (km ↔ mile).

Driving distance for remaining fuel

This mode indicates the estimated driving distance to empty from the current fuel in the fuel tank.

When the distance to empty is less than 50 km (30 miles), — will display.
5-30 Instruments and Controls

Note: The driving distance for remaining fuel can differ from the actual distance according to driving conditions, driving pattern or vehicle speed.

Average speed

This mode indicates the average speed. To reset the average speed to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

Driving time

This mode indicates the total driving time. To reset the driving time to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds. The driving time will be initialised to 0:00 after being displayed to 99:59.

Average Fuel Consumption

This mode indicates the vehicle's average fuel consumption.

Note: Average fuel consumption is reset to 10.0 if the battery is disconnected.

To reset the average fuel consumption to zero, press the MODE button for more than 2 seconds.

Note: The average fuel consumption can differ from the actual average fuel consumption according to driving conditions.
The average fuel consumption can according to the driving conditions, driving pattern or vehicle speed.

**Compass**

This displays the vehicle’s driving direction to 8-direction (N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, NW).

*Note:* Whenever the DIC or the battery is disconnected, the DIC must be recalibrated. To do this, the vehicle must be driven through 360°. Until calibrated the compass will not function correctly.

1. If you press the MODE and SET button simultaneously for more than 2 seconds, the compass display flashes.
2. Turn the vehicle around 1 complete circle within 90 seconds slowly, then the calibration will be accomplished.
3. When the calibration is finished, the compass display does not flash anymore. You can turn around to any direction, left or right. If enough space is not available to turn around 1 circle, turn the vehicle around as shown in the below figure.

**Release conditions for the compass calibration**

- Press the SET button twice continuously.
- When the vehicle is not turned within 90 seconds after calibration mode started.

*Note:* The direction will be displayed while driving.

If the compass display continues to flash, turn around again slowly until it goes off.
5-32  Instruments and Controls

Note: In the compass calibration mode, press the SET button to move to deflection calibration mode. At that time, press ▲ or ▼ button to adjust deflection calibration value.

⚠️ Caution

If there are mobile telephones or magnetic bodies around the DIC, the compass may not be operated properly.

Fatc display panel/outside temperature

See Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-6
Lighting

Exterior Lighting
- Exterior Lamp Controls ........ 6-1
- Automatic Light Control ...... 6-2
- Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer ........ 6-3
- Flash-to-Pass .................. 6-4
- Headlamp Range
  - Adjustment .................... 6-4
- Daytime Running
  - Lamps (DRL) ................. 6-4
- Hazard Lights ................ 6-4
- Turn and Lane-Change
  - Signals ....................... 6-5
- Front Fog Lamps ............... 6-5
- Rear Fog Lamps ............... 6-6
- Reversing Lamps .............. 6-6
- Misted Lamp Covers .......... 6-6

Interior Lighting
- Instrument Panel Illumination
  - Control ....................... 6-6
- Dome Lamps ................... 6-7
- Reading Lamps ................ 6-7

Lighting Features
- Entry Lighting ................. 6-8
- Battery Power Protection ..... 6-9

Exterior Lamp Controls

To turn the head, tail and parking lamps on or off, twist the end of the combination switch lever.

The light switch has three positions which activate various lamp functions as follows:

OFF: All the lights are off.

: The parking lamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lamps are illuminated.

: The dipped beam headlamps and all of the above lamps are illuminated.
## 6-2 Lighting

### Automatic Light Control

The light switch with automatic lamp control has four positions which activate various lamp functions as follows:

- **OFF**: All the lights are off.
- **AUTO**: Turn the lamps on or off automatically to illuminate in the position **OFF** or **AUTO** by sensing how dark it is outside. (Default position)
- **Dipped Beam**: The dipped beam headlamps and the lamps to come on in the position **Dipped Beam** are illuminated.
- **Parking**: The parking lamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lamps are illuminated.

To turn the automatic lamp control off, turn the light switch lever to the **OFF** position. The lever will return automatically to its normal original position when released.

To turn the automatic lamp control on, turn the light switch lever to the **OFF** position again.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In order for this feature to work properly, do not place stickers or other items over the sunlight sensor located in front of the windscreen defroster vents. Doing so could cause the sensor to malfunction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you open a driver's door or when you press UNLOCK button on the remote keyless entry transmitter, instrument panel lamps will come on automatically and stay on for about 30 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Lamps on reminder

If you open the driver's door with the ignition off and the light switch in the position **OFF** or **AUTO** you will hear a warning chime. But when you turn the lamps on again after turning them off while warning chime sounds, you will not hear a warning chime.

### Door-to-door light function

The door-to-door light function provides a period of exterior lighting as you leave the area around your vehicle when it is dark enough outside. The feature is activated when the exterior lamps are on due...
to the automatic lamp control feature, and when the ignition is turned off.

**Approaching light**

The feature is activated when the light switch is in the AUTO position and when it is dark enough outside. When you press the UNLOCK button on the remote keyless entry to get in your vehicle, hazard lamps flash twice and the exterior lamps illuminate automatically for about 20 seconds.

**Wiper activated lighting**

The feature is activated when the light switch is in the AUTO position. If the windscreen wipers continue to operate 8 cycles, the exterior lamps will illuminate automatically.

---

**Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer**

To turn the main beam headlamps on, make sure the dipped beam headlamps are on.

Push the combination switch lever toward the instrument panel.

The headlamp main beam indicator illuminates when headlamps are on main beam.

---

**Caution**

Always switch the main beam headlamps to dipped beam when you approach on coming vehicles or when other vehicles are ahead. Main beam headlamps can temporarily blind other drivers, which could result in a collision.

To switch from main beam headlamps to dipped beam, pull the combination switch lever back toward you, to its normal position.
6-4 Lighting

Flash-to-Pass

To flash the main beam headlamps, pull the combination switch lever toward you and release it. The lever will return to its normal position when you release it.

The main beam headlamps will stay on as long as you hold the combination switch lever toward you.

Headlamp Range Adjustment

Manual headlamp range adjustment

To adapt headlamp range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling turn knob to required position.

3 = driver’s seat occupied and load compartment laden.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime running light increases visibility of the vehicle in the daytime.

Tail lamps are not on.

Hazard Lights

Operated with the button.
To activate the hazard lights, push the button.
To turn off the hazard lights, push the button again.

**Turn and Lane-Change Signals**

lever up = right indicator
lever down = left indicator
If the lever is moved past the resistance point, the indicator is switched on constantly. When the steering wheel moves back, the indicator is automatically deactivated.
For three flashes, e.g. when changing lanes, press the lever until resistance is felt and then release.
Move the lever to the resistance point and hold for longer indication.
Switch the indicator off manually by moving the lever to its original position.

**Front Fog Lamps**

Fog lamps provide:
Extra illumination to the sides of the road ahead.
Improved visibility in fog or snow.
To turn the fog lamps on:
Make sure the light switch is in the $\text{ }$ or $\text{ }$ position.
Rotate the ring on the middle of the light switch lever to $\text{ }$. The ring will return automatically to its normal position when released.
The front fog lamp indicator in the instrument panel illuminates when the fog lamps are turned on.
To turn the fog lamps off, rotate the ring to $\text{ }$ position again. The front fog lamp indicator will go off.
If your vehicle has the automatic lamp control, parking lamps and dipped beam headlamps will come on simultaneously when turning on the front fog lamps.
6-6 Lighting

Rear Fog Lamps

To turn the rear fog lamps on, rotate the ring on the middle of the light switch lever to $\odot$ when the dipped beam headlamps are on, or when the parking lamps and the front fog lamps are on. The ring will return automatically to its normal position when released.

The rear fog lamp indicator in the instrument panel illuminates when the fog lamps are turned on.

To turn the fog lamps off, turn the ring to $\odot$ position again. The rear fog lamp indicator will go off.

If your vehicle has the automatic lamp control, parking lamps and dipped beam headlamps will come on simultaneously when turning on the rear fog lamps.

Reversing Lamps

The reversing lamp come on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted Lamp Covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlamps.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

The dimmer switch controls the brightness of the instrument panel lamps.

To dim the panel illumination, push the button and turn it clockwise.

To brighten the illumination, push the button and turn it anti-clockwise.
Dome Lamps

Press the button to turn on the interior lights. Press the button again to turn the lamps off. Centre/rear interior lights come on when you open a door or tailgate. If you continue to open a door or tailgate, the lamps will stay on for about 10 minutes. If all doors and tailgate are closed, the lamps dim gradually after about 10 seconds instead of immediately turning off.

Reading Lamps

Push the button to illuminate the front map light. Push again to turn off the light.

You can deactivate interior lights (when the button is not pressed), front door step lamps and key hole lamp by pressing the button.

Note: The battery can be discharged if the lights are turned on for a long time.
6-8 Lighting

⚠ Warning
Avoid using the courtesy light while driving in the dark.
A lit passenger compartment reduces visibility in the dark, and could cause a collision.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Welcome lighting
Some lights are switched on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the remote control. This function facilitates locating the vehicle when it is dark.
The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is turned to the accessory position.

Front door step lamp

Front door step lamps come on when you open a door. If you continue to open a door, the lamps will stay on for about 10 minutes.
If all doors are closed, the lamp stays on for about 10 seconds and then goes out.
Front door step lamps can be immediately turned off by pushing the button located on the headlining.
Ambient Lighting
If your vehicle has this feature, ambient lighting illuminates on front door sill plates, underneath front and rear seats when headlamps are on at night.

Battery Power Protection
Your vehicle has a feature to help prevent you from draining the battery in case you accidentally leave on the headlamps, parking lamps, or fog lamps, etc.

If you leave any of these lamps on, they will automatically turn off 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to the OFF position.

Battery rundown protection will not operate when you turn the lamps on 10 minutes after this feature operated.
Infotainment System 7-1

Introduction

General Information
The Infotainment system provides Infotainment in your car, using the latest technology.

The infotainment system can be easily used by registering up to 48 (36 Preset + 12 Auto Store) FM or AM stations with six Function buttons per every four pages.

The integrated CD player can play audio CD and MP3 (WMA) discs, and the USB player (only for Type 2 optional) can play connected USB storage devices or iPod products.

Connect a portable music player to the exterior sound input to and enjoy the rich sound of the Infotainment system.

The Bluetooth phone connection function allows for the use of wireless hands-free phone calls, as well as a phone music player.
7-2 Infotainment System

The digital sound processor provides a number of preset equaliser modes for sound optimisation.

The system can be easily adjusted using the carefully designed adjusting device, smart display, and multifunctional menu dial regulator.

- The "Overview" section provides a simple overview of Infotainment system's functions and summary of all regulatory devices.
- The "Operation" section explains the basic controls for the Infotainment system.
Overview

Type 1: Radio + CD/MP3 + Bluetooth
7-4 **Infotainment System**

Type 2: Radio/DAB + CD/MP3 + Bluetooth + USB/iPod + Optional A-NAVI
Type 3: Radio + CD/MP3 Changer + Bluetooth
7-6 Infotainment System

1. Display
   Display for Play/Reception/Menu state and information.
2. Disc slot
   This is the slot in which compact discs are inserted or ejected.
3. DIRECTORY [DIR] button (only for Type 1/2)
   Select directory unit/All track unit.
   LOAD button (only for Type 3)
   Use this button to insert a disc into the infotainment system.
4. SEEK buttons
   Radio mode
   - Press: To search for the next/previous receivable higher/lower station.
   - Down hold: To use Automatic store.
   CD/MP3 or Optional USB/iPod mode
   - To search for the next/previous media library
5. Function buttons
   To select the functions indicated in the display.
6. EJECT button
   Press this button and take out the disc.
7. TUNE buttons
   In the radio mode, selects the radio station (tuning downward/upward)
   - In the CD/MP3 or Optional USB/iPod mode, used to play previous/next track or fast search backward through the tracks being played.
8. BAND button
   Press button to select FM/AM radio band or DAB (only for Type 2).
9. FAVOURITE [FAV] button
   Switches between preset channel pages.
10. MENU/SOUND button
    - Press
      - In FM radio or DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting: only for Type 2) mode: To use RDS Menu or DAB Menu.
      - In iPod mode: To use the Ipod media library function (only for Type 2 optional)
    - Down hold: Press to select the tone, front/back and left/right volume distribution modes.
11. POWER [ ] button with VOLUME dial
When the power is ON:

- Press: Switches the mute function ON and OFF.
- Down hold: Turns the unit's power OFF.
- Turn the dial to Volume adjustment and tone adjustment in the tone control mode.

When the power is OFF:

- Pressing the power button turns the power ON.

12. BLUETOOTH [B]
   To select the BLUETOOTH functions indicated in the display.

13. TP/INFORMATION [INFO] button
   - Press: Traffic announcement reception setting.

- Down hold: Shows the necessary information for operations in each mode and function, programmes being broadcast, and disc/external device information.

14. AUX port
   Connect an exterior sound device to this port.

15. SOURCE [SRC]/PAUSE button (only for Type 2)
   Press to select CD/MP3, USB/iPod or AUX audio function.

   CD/AUX button (only for Type 1/3)
   Press to select CD/MP3 or connected AUX function.
7-8 Infotainment System

1. Volume [+] [-] buttons
   - Press the button to increase/decrease the volume step.
   - Hold down the button more than 1 second to quickly increase/decrease the volume level.

2. MODE button
   Press the button to select Radio, AUX or CD/MP3/USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio function.

3. SEEK button
   - Press the button to change the registered radio stations or music track being played.
   - Hold down the button more than 1 second to quickly seek up the frequency or forward through the currently playing songs.

4. POWER MUTE button
   - Press the button in standby mode to turn the infotainment system on.
   - Press the button in any music play mode to turn the mute function on/off.
   - Hold down the button more than 1 second to turn the infotainment system off.

5. CALL button
   - Press the button in standby mode to make a call or answer the incoming call.
   - Press the button twice to dial for last call number.
   - Hold down the button more than 1 second to cancel or hang-up the call.

Operation

Buttons and controlling device
The Infotainment system is operated by using the function buttons, multifunctional dial, and the menu indicated on the screen display.

The buttons and control devices used in the system are as follows.
   - The Infotainment system buttons and dial
   - Steering wheel audio remote control buttons

System on/off
Press the POWER button to turn the power on.
   - Turning on the power will play the previously chosen broadcasting station or song.

Hold down the POWER button more than 1 second to turn the power off.
Volume control

Turn the VOLUME dial to adjust the volume.
- Using the steering wheel audio remote control, press the Volume [+/-] buttons to adjust the volume.
- The current sound volume is indicated.
- Turning on the Infotainment system power will set the volume level to its previous selection (when it is less than the maximum starting volume).

Audio Mute

Press the POWER [ ] button to audio mute when the power is on.

Tone settings

Hold down the MENU/SOUND button to display Tone setting menu.
Press the Function button under "Tone settings menu" to select desired control mode.

Turn the VOLUME dial to select the desired tone control value.

Tone Settings menu

- Bass: Adjust the bass level from -12 to +12.
- Midrange [Mid]: Adjust the midrange level from -12 to +12.
- Treble [Treb]: Adjust the treble level from -12 to +12.
- Balance [Bal]: Adjust the left/right speaker balance from left 15 to right 15.
- Fader [Fad]: Adjust the front/rear speaker balance from front 15 to rear 15 in the six speaker system model.
- Preset Equaliser [P EQ]: Select a sound style (Pop/Rock/Country/Voice/Jazz/Classic)
- To cancel the selected Preset EQ, press the Function button under P EQ once more with same procedure.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Radio Mode Selection

Press the BAND button to listen to the FM/AM radio and DAB (only for Type 2) from other mode.

Band Change

The band changes from AM to FM, FM to AM or FM to DAB, DAB to AM (only for Type 2) every time BAND button pressed.

Manual Tune Up/Down

Press TUNE buttons to change frequency up/down.

The frequency increases or decreases 1 step every time TUNE buttons pressed.

Seek Up/Down

Press TUNE buttons to find next/previous station automatically.
7-10 Infotainment System

Favourite preset memory
It has 6 favourite pages and store up to 36 stations regardless of AM/FM band and DAB (only for Type 2).
It can store a station by the following procedure
1. Seek station or tune manually the station you want.
2. Select the favourite page by pressing the FAVOURITE [FAV] button.
3. Hold down a Function button more than 1 second under the number where you store this station.

By above procedure, the 36 stations are stored in the favourite preset memory.

Recall favourite preset
You can listen to the station stored in the favourite preset by the following procedure.
1. Select the favourite page by pressing the FAVOURITE [FAV] button.
2. Press the Function button under the Favourite preset number which the station you want to listen is stored.

Auto-store
Hold down the SEEK button, the radio will start auto-store operation and store 12 stations automatically.

DAB Service component Search (only for Type 2)
Press the TUNE buttons to seek for available DAB service component in current ensemble.

To skip to the previous/next ensemble, press the SEEK buttons.

DAB Ensemble Search (only for Type 2)
Hold down the SEEK buttons to automatically seek for available DAB service component with good reception.

Linking the DAB Service (only for Type 2)
When you setup the Auto linking DAB-FM is activated, if the DAB service signal is weak, the infotainment system received the linked service component automatically. (refer to DAB Menu → select the desired Link mode)

Tuning a DAB station manually (only for Type 2)
From the DAB mode, press the MENU button.

In the DAB Menu display, press the Function button under TUNE.

Turn the TUNE buttons to manually find the desired broadcasting frequency.
Using the DAB Stations list
1. From the DAB mode, press the MENU button.
2. In the DAB Menu display, press the LIST button.
3. In the Station Menu display, press the LIST button.
4. The Station list information will be displayed.
5. You can search the Station lists that are part of Function button under TUNE.
6. Press the Function button under ENT buttons to select the desired list.

Showing the DAB information (only for Type 2)
Repeatedly long press INFO button to select the desired display mode for DAB station information.

DAB Category list
1. From the DAB mode, press the MENU button.
2. In the DAB Menu display, press the LIST button.
3. In the Station Menu display, press the CAT button.
4. The DAB category list will be displayed.
5. Turn the ←, → to select the desired list, and then press the Category button to receive the relevant broadcasting frequency.
6. You can search the Station lists that are advantage of TUNE buttons.
7. Turn the ENT buttons to select the desired list.

DAB Update stations list (only for Type 2)
1. From the DAB mode, press the MENU button.
2. In the DAB Menu display, press the LIST button.
3. In the Station Menu display, press the UPDATE button.
4. DAB broadcasting list update will proceed.
5. Turn the ←, → to select the desired list, and then press the Announcement button to receive the relevant broadcasting frequency.
6. The announcement button will be activated.

Radio Data System (RDS)
AF On/Off
AF function makes the radio track the best station all the time.
Press the MENU button in the radio mode, and then the radio displays the radio menu.
Press the Function button under RDS, and then the infortainment system displays the RDS menu.
Press the Function button under AF.
The AF is enabled or disabled whenever you press this function button.
7-12 Infotainment System

Regional On/Off
Regional function to make the infotainment system jump to regional station (Regional off).
Press the MENU button in the radio mode, and then the infotainment system displays the radio menu.
Press the Function button under RDS, and then the infotainment system displays the RDS menu.
Press the Function button under REG.
The regional options are enabled or disabled whenever you press this Function button.

Traffic station seek
Press the TP button in the radio station that hasn't the traffic announcement, the infotainment system searches the next station that has the traffic announcement.

Traffic announcement reception
Press the TP button to listen to the traffic announcement, the infotainment system enables the traffic announcement.
Press the TP button to cancel the traffic announcement if the infotainment system is in the traffic announcement mode.

Audio Players

CD Player
Once playback begins, the track and track number will appear on the display.
If the ignition or infotainment system is turned off with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned on, the infotainment system must be turned on before the current CD will start playback. When the ignition and infotainment system are turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.
The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.
If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been
Infotainment System 7-13

recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see Care of Your CDs for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labelling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

**Notice:** If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player.

When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

**CD playback mode selection**

Press the SOURCE [SRC] (only for Type 2) or CD (only for Type 1/3) button to play back the disc from other mode.

**Disc Load (only for Type 3)**

This infotainment system can hold up to 6 discs.

1. Press the LOAD button, and then the infotainment system will show the number of empty discs.

2. Press the Function button under the Disc Number you want to insert.

3. Insert a CD into a CD slot with CD label up, then the radio insert into the slot automatically and play back.

**To insert multiple CDs, do the following: (only for Type 3)**

1. Hold down the LOAD button for one second. You will hear a beep and a message to load multiple discs will be displayed.

2. Follow the displayed instruction on when to insert the discs.

The CD player can take up to 6 discs.

**Note:** Press the LOAD button again to cancel loading more CDs.

**CD Eject**

Press the EJECT button, and then the disc will be ejected from the tray from the infotainment system.

Pull the disc out of the tray.
**7-14 Infotainment System**

**Pause**

Hold down the PAUSE (only for Type 2) or CD (only for Type 1/3) button to pause playback while a CD is playing.

"PAUSE" will flash on the display.

Press and hold the PAUSE (only for Type 2) or CD (only for Type 1/3) button again to start playing the CD.

If the infotainment system is connected with AUX unit or USB/iPod device then pause function won't be enabled.

**Next/Previous Track**

Press the \[ TUNE \] \[ TUNE \] buttons, then the infotainment system starts playback of the next/previous track.

**Next/Previous Folder**

Press the \[ SEEK \] \[ SEEK \] buttons, and then the infotainment system starts playback of the next/previous folder.

**Fast forward/Fast reverse**

Press and hold the \[ TUNE \] \[ TUNE \] buttons, then the infotainment system plays with fast forward/fast reverse.

**RPT (Repeat)**

Press the Function button under RPT, then the infotainment system plays back the current track on repeat.

To cancel this function, press the Function button under RPT again.

**RDM (Random)**

Press the Function button under RDM, then the infotainment system plays back a track randomly.

To cancel this function, press the Function button under RDM again.

**INT (Scan)**

Press the Function button under INT, then the infotainment system plays back the first few seconds of all tracks sequentially.

To cancel this function, press the Function button under INT again.

**MP3**

**MP3/WMA Format**

If you burn your own MP3/WMA disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3/WMA files are recorded on a CD-R disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3/WMA files on one disc.
- Make sure each MP3/WMA file has a .mp3 or .wma extension, other file extensions may not work.
- Files can be recorded with a variety of fixed or variable bit rates. Song title, artist name, and album will be available for display by the infotainment system when recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organise songs by
albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.

- Make sure to finalise the disc when burning an MP3/WMA disc, using multiple sessions. It is usually better to burn the disc all at once.

The player will be able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, 5 sessions, and 999 files.

Long file names, folder names may use more disc memory space than necessary. To conserve space on the disc, minimise the length of the file, folder names. You can also play an MP3/WMA CD that was recorded using no file folders. The system can support up to 8 folders in depth, though, keep the depth of the folders to a minimum in order to keep down the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback. If a CD contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 5 sessions, and 999 files the player will let you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum will be ignored.

**Root Directory**

The root directory will be treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory will be displayed as ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory will be accessed prior to any other directory.

**Empty Directory or Folder**

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player will advance to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files and the empty folder will not be displayed or numbered.

**No Folder**

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files will be located under the root folder.

The next and previous folder functions will have no function on a CD that was recorded without folders.

When displaying the name of the folder the infotainment system will display ROOT.

When the CD contains only compressed audio files, but no folders, all files will be located under the root folder. When the infotainment system displays the name of the folder, the infotainment system will display ROOT.

**Order of Play**

Tracks will be played in the following order:

- Playback will begin from the first track under the root directory.
- When all tracks from the root directory have been played, playback will continue from files, according to their numerical listing.
7-16 Infotainment System

- After playing the last track from the last folder, the player will begin playing again at the first track of the first folder or root directory.

File System and Naming
The song name in the ID3 tag will be displayed. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the infotainment system will display the file name without the extension (such as MP3/WMA) instead. Track names longer than 32 characters or 4 pages will be shortened. The display will not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename will not be displayed.

Playing a MP3/WMA
With the ignition on, insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in, Load, then File check, and then MP3 or WMA will appear on the display. The CD should begin playing. You cannot insert a CD with the ACC off.

As each new track starts to play, the track number, and the song name will appear on the display.

If the ignition or infotainment system is turned off with a CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When a CD is in the player and the ignition is turned on, the infotainment system must be turned on before the CD will start playback. When the ignition and infotainment system are turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 Cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see Care of Your CDs for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labelling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen instead.

Notice: If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player...
and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.

If an error appears on the display, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

All of the CD functions work the same while playing an MP3WMA, except for those listed here. See "Playing a CD" earlier for more information.

**All/Directory mode**

Repeat, intro-scan, random function operate in this folder when all mode is active.

Press the Function button under ALL, then the All changes to DIR. To cancel DIR mode, press the Function button under DIR again.

**ID3 Tag information display**

Press the INFORMATION [INFO] button, the infotainment system displays the ID3 tag information of the current files.

---

**CD messages**

**CHECK CD**: If this message appears on the display and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- The format of the CD may not be compatible. See "MP3 Format" earlier in this section.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the infotainment system displays an error message, write it down and give it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

---

**Auxiliary Devices**

**Using an USB/iPod (Only for Type 2 optional)**

**USB/iPod Playback Mode Selection**

Press the SOURCE [SRC] button to change to playing back the USB or iPod files from other mode.

**USB/iPod memory insertion**

Insert a USB memory stick or iPod connector into the USB socket, so the infotainment system plays back the USB or iPod files automatically.
7-18 Infotainment System

USB/iPod Extraction
Pull the USB memory stick or iPod connector from the USB socket by hand.
*Other functions are same with CD mode.

Pause
Press and hold the PAUSE button to pause playback while USB memory stick or iPod is playing.
"PAUSE" will flash on the display.
Press and hold the PAUSE button again to start playing the USB or iPod.
• If the infotainment system is connected with aux unit or CD then pause function won't be enabled.

Next/Previous Track
Press the ▼ TUNE buttons, and then the infotainment system starts playback of the next/previous track.

Fast forward/Fast reverse
Press and hold the ▼ TUNE buttons. Then the infotainment system plays back fast forward/fast reverse.

Next/Previous Folder for MP3/WMA disc only
Press the SEEK buttons to start playback of the next/previous folder.

RPT (Repeat)
Press the Function button under RPT, then the infotainment system plays back the current track on repeat.
To cancel this function, press the Function button under RPT again.

RDM (Random)
Press the Function button under RDM, then infotainment system plays back the track randomly.
To cancel this function, press the Function button under RDM again.

INT (Intro-Scan)
Press the Function button under INT, then the infotainment system plays back the first few seconds of all tracks sequentially.
To cancel this function, press the Function button under INT again.

iPod Navigation Function
(Only for Type 2 optional)
iPod Navigation mode
Press the MENU button to choose the supported category from the iPod instrument.

Next/Previous Category
Press the SEEK buttons, and then press the Function button under ENT, then the infotainment system starts playback.

Cancel or Previous Step
Press the Function button under ←, then the infotainment system goes back to the previous step.
Infotainment System

Bluetooth Audio
After Bluetooth connection procedure. (refer to "Pairing procedure")

A2DP mode
Press the Function button below AUDIO PLAY on the display.

PLAY
Press the Function button below ▶/‖ in the display to start playback of MP3 files on the connected handset.

Pause
Press the Function button below ▶/‖ in the display to pause playback while MP3 file is in playback.

Next/Previous Track
Press the Function button below ▲ /▼ in the display, and then the MP3 file starts playback of the next/previous track.

Exterior Sound (AUX) Input
The infotainment system has one auxiliary input jack (diameter 3.5mm) located on the lower right side of the faceplate.
This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack.
You can however, connect an external audio device such as an iPod, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, or XM™ receiver, etc. to the auxiliary input jack for use as another source for audio listening.

AUX-In Mode Selection
Press the SOURCE [SRC] (only for Type 2) or AUX (only for Type 1/3) button in the other playback mode.
If the auxiliary jack doesn't detect the presence of an output jack, the aux mode will be prevented from coming up.

A-Navigation mode (only for Type 2 optional)
A-Navigation Mode Selection
Press the MEDIA button to select the A-NAVI mode.
7-20 Infotainment System

Navigation

Navigation System Overview

Introduction
1. Getting started

Safety Information

Before using the navigation system, please read the following safety information. When using the system, these safety rules must be followed to prevent personal injury to you and others and avoid damage to property.

Traffic regulations have priority over any instructions from the navigation system. Always follow the posted traffic signs, speed limits and road restrictions.

While driving, do not look at the screen for more than a second or so at a time, and only after deciding you can do so safely.
For your safety, do not operate the system controls while driving. It can distract the driver and may result in a serious accident. Park the vehicle in a safe area before operating the system.

Do not disassemble or modify the device. If you do, it may result in accidents, fire, or electrical shock.

Do not pour water or insert foreign objects into the device. This may cause smoke emissions, fires or shocks.
7-22 Infotainment System

Do not use the system if you notice any malfunction such as a frozen screen or lack of sound. Continued use of the system may result in an accident.

Do not park your vehicle in an unauthorised area to operate the system.

The various volume settings should be selected so that acoustic signals from outside the vehicle are audible at all time.
Check the volume prior to turning the device on. If the volume is turned up when turning the switch on, a loud sound will emit which may damage your hearing.

Do not keep the system running with the engine stopped. Doing so can drain the vehicle's battery. When you use the system, always keep the engine running.

Do not apply excessive force to the screen. This may cause the system to malfunction.
7-24 Infotainment System

Clean with a cloth slightly moistened with water only. Do not use chemical or other domestic cleaning agents, as these could damage the screen.

Do not place objects on the dashboard. It will affect the sensor which controls headlamp and display brightness.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel or rear window shelf. Doing so may disrupt the GPS satellite signal and cause the system to operate inaccurately.
If the vehicle's windscreen is tinted with a reflective metal coating, it will affect the GPS reception.

Should the liquid crystal panel crack, do not come into contact with the liquid coming from the interior of the panel. This may lead to inflammation of the skin.

- If the liquid is accidentally ingested, see a doctor immediately.
- If the liquid gets into the eyes or into the skin, wash out with a large amount of water and see a doctor immediately.

Do not, under any circumstances, insert SD Card with irregular shape into SD Card Slot.

These cards may become jammed or destroy the slot. The unit will then have to be exchanged at your expense.

The unit may not function properly in extreme cold or extreme heat conditions. Bring the ambient temperature back to normal to ensure proper operation.

Device components

Control panel
1. NAVI : Navigation
2. MENU : Main Menu
3. TRIP : Driving Information
4. DIM : Switches the display between Day screen and Night screen.
5. SD card slot
7-26 Infotainment System

Steering wheel

1. Power on/off
2. Changing to the next station or track
   To reach the next station in the selected frequency band or the next music track
3. Changing modes
   Switches between AM, FM, CD, AUX, NAVI and Multimedia mode each time the button is pressed.
4. Adjusting Volume

⚠️ Caution

Steering wheel switch may not be available depending on the type of vehicle.
- If you press the MODE or SEEK button repeatedly at short intervals, CPU overload may occur and cause a system crash.

Basic operations

Starting the System
The navigation system starts when the ignition switch is placed in the ACC or ON position. When the system starts, the screen displays last used mode.
The power will turn OFF when turning off the engine. After the engine turned off, the system runs for 30 seconds to save the data.
**Infotainment System 7-27**

---

**Caution**

- Last used mode is saved when the engine turned off.
- If you start the system in 30 seconds after the key pull off, the system doesn't need booting time.
- To reset the system, press the MENU and TRIP button together for 10 seconds. Release the buttons when the system begins to restart.

**System Controls**

The following hard keys are located on the navigation system.

1. NAVI : Navigation
2. MENU : Main Menu
3. RIP : Driving Information
4. DIM : Brightness Change

**Main Menu**

Press the MENU hard key to display the Main Menu screen. From this screen you can reach all of the navigation system functions. Screen buttons will be highlighted when a function is available and disabled when they are unavailable.

---

1. Navigation
2. MP3
3. Movie
4. Trip Information
5. ATC Information
6. Settings
7-28 Infotainment System

MP3

1. File Information
2. Playing Time
3. Playing Status
4. Current Folder
5. File List
6. Repeat
7. List Control
8. Stop
9. Previous File
10. Play/Pause

11. Next File
12. Higher Folder
13. Random Order

Movie

1. Current Folder
2. File List
3. Higher Folder
4. List control
5. Stop
6. Previous File
7. Play/Pause
8. Next File
9. File List
10. Repeat
11. Full Screen On/Off
12. Playing status
Infotainment System 7-29

Trip

1. Average Vehicle Speed reset
2. Driving Time reset
3. Average Fuel Consumption reset
4. Average Vehicle Speed
5. Driving Time
6. Average Fuel Consumption
7. Range for Remaining Fuel
8. Display Compass
9. Return to Main Menu

ATC

Besides pressing the ATC button in Main Menu, ATC information is displayed on the bottom of the screen whenever the information relevant to the air conditioner such as temperature, air flow, etc is changed. This Pop Up screen will be displayed for 5 seconds.
7-30 Infotainment System

Settings

1. Screen Touch Calibration

Caution

If you want to know about detailed ATC information, refer to climate control section.

2. System Information
3. System Upgrade
4. Navigation Upgrade
5. User Preference

System setup

Volume
1. MP3, Movie, FM/AM, CD

You can adjust the volume by turning the audio system volume knob or pressing the steering wheel switch.

If you press the volume knob, the volume becomes mute. Press again to turn the sound back on.

To turn the sound off, press the volume knob for 3 seconds. ATC information is displayed on the screen when it turned off.
2. Navigation

You can change the volume levels of voice guidance in Navigation mode only. You may also choose to turn voice guidance prompts off.

You can’t raise or lower the volume of navigation information in relation to other audio sources.

Screen

If you press the DIM hard key, the system will dim up to 70% of the brightness.

There are 3 steps to adjust the screen brightness.

(On → 50% → 70% → On)
Press the DIM hard key for 3 seconds to turn off the display. During the screen off, the GPS positioning function keeps working. The screen turns on again when any hard key is pressed.

Caution

- According to an external light, the screen brightness is automatically adjusted.
- Do not place objects on the dashboard.

Settings

Touch : calibrate the touch screen.
System Information : displays the information on the navigation system software.
System Upgrade
Navigation Upgrade

User Preference : customise the system to better suit your needs.

Touch

You can calibrate the touch screen if it is not responding accurately to your taps.
Tap the centre of the target with stylus. When the target moves to another position, tap the new target. Repeat each time to complete the calibration process.
7-32 Infotainment System

System Information
Display the current version of the system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H/W : hardware</th>
<th>S/W : software</th>
<th>O/S : operating system</th>
<th>GPS : GPS Firmware</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

System Upgrade
Insert updatable SD card into SD card slot. (For updatable SD card, Please contact an authorised GM dealer)

Press the MENU hard key and touch the Settings button.

Press the System Upgrade button.
Press UPGRADE button for system upgrade. If you do not need to upgrade a particular system, press check out to disable.

**Caution**

- To avoid a system malfunction do not remove SD card, turn the engine off, or operate the system while upgrading.

**Navigation Upgrade**

Insert updatable SD card into SD card slot. (For purchasing updatable navigation SD card, please contact an authorized GM dealer)

Press the MENU hard key and touch the Settings button.

Press UPGRADE button for navigation upgrade.

**Caution**

- Depending on the size of the files, it takes up to 25 minutes for update.

**User Preference**

The navigation system can be customised to make it easier to use. You can adjust Display Unit, Language, Time Zone.
7-34 Infotainment System

Confirm the selection by pressing the Save button.

Display Unit
This allows you to change the measurement unit used in the system.

Distance: Miles or Kilometres
Temperature: Celsius or Fahrenheit
Volume: Litre or Gallon

Note: When Gallon is selected for the volume unit, the distance unit in Trip Information is changed to Miles automatically.

Language
Select the desired language. This system supports 11 languages for displayed text in main menu. Navigation menu supports 11 languages for displayed text and voice commands as well.

Time Zone
Use  button to set the appropriate time zone. Check Daylight Savings if it is in effect for your time zone. (Daylight savings is not automatically adjusted.)

Time zone list that you can select.
### Time Zone Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time Zone</th>
<th>Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romance Standard Time</td>
<td>(GMT+01:00) Brussels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMT Standard Time</td>
<td>(GMT+00:00) London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Europe Standard Time</td>
<td>(GMT+01:00) Amsterdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central European Standard Time</td>
<td>(GMT+01:00) Sarajevo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Europe Standard Time</td>
<td>(GMT+01:00) Belgrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTB Standard Time</td>
<td>(GMT+02:00) Bucharest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Depending on the position of the driver of the vehicle, RHD / LHD can be selected.
System Function
1. Multimedia

MP3

Playable MP3 file standard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compression type</th>
<th>MPEG-1 Audio Layer III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sampling frequency</td>
<td>8, 11.025, 12, 16, 22.05, 24, 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit rate</td>
<td>8~320 (kbps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. directory layer</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. characters for folder/file name</td>
<td>64 Bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character set for folder/file name</td>
<td>A to Z, 0 to 9, _ (underscore)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. number of folders</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. number of files</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID3 Tag</td>
<td>Ver 1.0, Ver 1.1, Ver 2.2, Ver 2.3, Ver 2.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- A fixed bit rate of 96, 128, 192kbps with sampling frequency of 44.1kHz is recommended for stable audio quality at playback.
- If the bit rate exceeds 192kbps, there may be sound jumping during MP3 playback. Use 192kbps or lower bit rate for the MP3.

Caution
- Each file that is not an MP3 file is also counted as a file.

How to use the MP3 player

Press the MENU hard key and touch the MP3 button.
Press the MODE button on steering wheel until MP3 player is displayed.
The mode changes when you press steering wheel switch.
AM → FM → CD → AUX → NAVI → Multimedia → return to AM

1. File Information : Displays the file currently being played.
2. Playing Time
3. Playing Status
4. Current Folder : Displays the level of the file currently being played.
5. File List
6. Repeat : The file currently being played will be repeated.
7. List Control : Moving between pages.
8. Stop
10. Play/Pause
12. Higher Folder : Displays the next higher folder level.
7-38 Infotainment System

Movie
Supported file formats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio</th>
<th>MP3, WMA, OGG, WAV (bit rate 128~192kbps)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video</td>
<td>MPEG1/2/4, DivX3.0/4.0/5.0, XviD, WMV7.0/8.0/9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. Resolution</td>
<td>800 x 480</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Caution

- A Movie which has bigger than 800x480 resolution may not be played properly.
- When a Movie is being played, other operation will become slower.
- With mixed mode SD Card (combination of audio, move and data) only the audio or (Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- movie files are recognised and played back depending on a selected mode.
  - For driver safety, movies can be played only when the vehicle is stationary.

How to use the Movie player

Press the MENU hard key and touch the Movie button.
1. Current Folder
2. File List
3. Higher Folder
4. List control
5. Stop
6. Previous File
7. Play/Pause
8. Next File
9. File List
10. Repeat
11. Full Screen On/Off
12. Playing Status

**SD card**
- HDD type/CF memory is not supported.

**Caution**
Do not, under any circumstances, insert SD Card with irregular shape into SD Card Slot. These cards may become jammed or destroy the slot. The unit will then have to be exchanged at your expense.

- DRM (Digital Rights Management) file format will not work.
7-40  Infotainment System

2. Information features

Trip

Trip information displays driving-related information by graphics.

Press the TRIP hard key or press the MENU hard key and touch the Trip button.

Press □ button to close.

1. Average Vehicle Speed reset
2. Driving Time reset
3. Average Fuel Consumption reset
4. Average Vehicle Speed
5. Driving Time
6. Average Fuel Consumption
7. Range for Remaining Fuel
   Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. This distance is estimated from the average fuel economy over the last several miles, so it will vary depending on speed, traffic, etc.
8. Display Compass : Directions of vehicle’s movement
9. Return to Main Menu
   * select reset when you are starting a trip or route that you want to record.

ATC

ATC information displays the state of air conditional.
Press the MENU hard key and touch the ATC button.
ATC information is also displayed by pressing the volume knob of the audio for 3 seconds.

1. Setting Temperature
2. Outside Temperature
3. Direction of the Wind
4. State of Air Conditional (on/off)
5. State of AUTO (on/off)
6. Power of the Wind

Rear View Camera
When you are trying to park the vehicle, a guideline will be displayed on the screen.
(guideline appears when shifting gear to reverse)

![Rear View Camera Image]

### Caution
- This function is not supported depending on the type of vehicle.
- Depending on Rear View Camera wholly is dangerous when unexpected situation is occurred. Watch out in all directions when parking.

(Continued)
7-42 Infotainment System

Caution (Continued)

- Guideline is optimised according to vehicle's width. But parking line may not match the guideline.
- Lower the volume (MP3, Navigation) so that you can hear the parking alert.
- Pulling out SD Card device during Rear View Camera mode may cause the device to malfunction.

Getting Started

Welcome to a-navi system

Thank you for choosing Advanced Navigation System ("A-Navi System") as your in-car navigator in Europe. This manual is a detailed description of the navigation software. You can easily learn to use it; and we still recommend you read this manual to understand screens and operation steps of A-Navi System.

1. Precautions

- For your safety concern, we recommend that you operate A-Navi System before starting the journey. Do not operate A-Navi System while driving as this might lead to collision or damage. Please ask your passenger to operate it if necessary.
- Local driving regulations and driving conditions have to be observed all the time. They have precedence over the driving instructions given by A-Navi System.
- Although all safety considerations have been taken into account while designing the A-Navi System, the use of navigation system does not release the driver from driver's responsibility for proper and prudent behaviour on the road.

2. Introduction to a-navi system

- Quick and Easy to Learn — you can learn how to operate it easily within 3 minutes.
- Intelligent Multi-Map Management — A-Navi System do not require you change maps when you navigate between map segments or countries. You could move map screen in any direction and check POI information on map.
- Fast Visualised Positioning — you can very quickly locate the current position and get information about the next turning point.
- Smooth Map Scrolling — When driving, the map will scroll up and down on the screen in order to help you get an overview of your location (or position).
- Zoom In/Out — The map scale adjusts according to the driving speed. This allows you to have a proper view of the map.
Day/Night Mode Switch — the backlight of the map and the colour of the indicator of the position fix can be changed manually. This gives you a better visualisation of the map at night.

Two Waypoints — allow 2 waypoints at most and it guides you to your destination one by one.

23 POI Categories — A-Navi System allows you to search for restaurants, airports, petrol stations, etc. in a very convenient and easy way.

Reasonable Route Planning — it takes all traffic regulations, such as one-way restrictions, turn restrictions, and so on into consideration when planning a route; besides that, user can change route options based on the driving preference or conditions.

Information about Turning Points — provided with the detailed information of each turning point of a proposed route, you can view all turning points along your entire trip.

Schematic Map of Inter-Crossing — Clear schematic illustration of each junction guarantees you view it in advance and keeps you on the right track to your destination.

Information about GPS Satellites — You can view the status and number of signals received from GPS satellites.

Track Log — A-Navi System logs your trip information. This information can be replayed or re-used for future trips.

Multi-POI locations — Display two or more POIs with the same or close location.

Navigation in tunnel and underground car parking — gyroscope free inertial navigation system helps you never get lost despite no GPS signal.

Off-Road Navigation — when you drive off road, system will automatically store current position and travelled path on map.

Left/Right-hand Drive — you can change the left/right layout between map and Navigation Info Column to follow local regulations and driving customs.

Vehicle Speed Display on/off — display or hide current vehicle speed.

Motorway Signpost — displaying distance from your current position to next exit.

Multi-language Support — support 11 Voices and languages.

Safety Alert for Speeding — Safety Alert is based on legal speed limits on different types of road. System will alarm you by voice guidance when you are approaching the speed limit for
7-44 Infotainment System

the road. In addition, you can set a speed tolerance from 0 to 20%.

Getting started
A-Navi System is a good choice for in-car navigation. You can easily use it by tapping the screen or drawing the map with your fingers.

Quick reference
This chapter gives you a brief introduction of how to use A-Navi System. Before we explore all the detailed functionalities provided by this application, please make sure that:

• A-Navi System searches for positioning information from at least three satellites and your position is fixed once the application starts.

When you use the GPS receiver for the first time, it may take 2-3 minutes to secure satellite information and orientate accurate position (Cold start). Your position fix is stored in the memory. For subsequent use of the GPS receiver, it will only take 1-3 minutes to locate your position (Warm start). Once your position is fixed by the GPS receiver, the system starts navigation immediately without any extra operation when you start the application.

2. Getting started

Picture 2.1 Welcome Screen

• When starting A-Navi System for the first time, the system enters Chevrolet "Welcome" screen. It takes about 15s to automatically switch "Welcome" screen to "Caution" Screen.
Infotainment System  7-45

Picture 2.2 System Caution

- Please read A-Navi System Caution carefully and click Press "Agree" button to enter "Free Navi Map" screen.

Picture 2.3 Free Navi Map

- In Free Navi Map, you could let system go without any operation and it tracks your driving route.

Picture 2.4 Free Navigation Menu

- If you want to access more functions, please touch Main Menu on Free Navi Map; System then enter Free Navi Menu screen.

In Free Navi Menu, you can access key functions of A-Navi System as below:

- Touch "Go to" to set destination(S).
- Touch ":Map Options" to change map parameters.
7-46 Infotainment System

- Touch "Settings" to change all settings parameters.
- Touch the hot key and the system will be back to navigation map.

When you use A-Navi System for the first time, you may want to change the language of the system.

3. Route & free navigation maps

Route/Free navigation map screen is the most frequently used screen of A-Navi System. Free navigation map screen displays when you cold start A-Navi System, while Route Navigation Map displays when you continue last navigation when you restart the system.
Picture 2.5 Route Navigation Map
Picture 2.6 Free Navi Map
1. Car Icon — indicates the current position and driving direction.

2. Turning sign — The sliver arrow shows you which road you should take at the approaching turning point.

3. Current road — the field is empty if the road is unnamed.

4. Next road — the name of the next approaching road.

5. Turning scheme — show the road structure at the next turning; and by touching this icon, system will announce the next turning information such as "About 900 metres, turn left".

6. Distance to next turn — show you the distance to next turning point virtually.

7. Distance progress bar

8. Current Speed — show current driving speed.

9. Distance-to-go — Remaining distance between start and destination or next waypoint.

10. ETA — Estimated time to arrival at destination.

11. Speed Alert — shows you speed cameras ahead and the speed limits

12. GPS Status — touch to view GPS Status; Grey means GPS signal is weak or GPS has not been fixed while Green means GPS has been fixed.

13. Volume — touch to adjust the volume for voice guidance.

14. Compass — indicates the North of the map.

15. Scale Bar — indicate scale of map.

16. Zoom in button — touch to zoom in on the map.

17. Zoom out button — touch to zoom out on the map.

18. Main Menu— touch to enter Route Navi Menu.

19. Driving speed — the current driving speed.

20. Longitude /Latitude — shows the longitude and Latitude of current map centre.

21. Current Time

22. Main Menu — touch to enter Free Navi Menu.

4. Keyboards

A-Navi System provides alphabetical-format keyboard which includes Latin alphabets, numeric, punctuation and especially special characters/symbols in 30 languages.

ABC-type Keyboard only contains letters.
7-50 Infotainment System

Picture 2.7 Alphabetic-format Keyboard

123: touch to display numeric and punctuation.

GER: touch to display special symbols in Germany.

: touch to switch special symbol keyboards in other countries.

Picture 2.8 Numeric Keyboard

: touch and return to ABC keyboard.

: Space key.

: touch and delete last letter you entered.

Picture 2.9 Special Symbol Keyboard

: touch and return to the previous screen.

On Map: touch and display the location of highlighted record on map.

OK: Confirm keyboard entry or selection.
Using the Navigation System

Selecting a destination - go to?

Picture 3.1 Free Navi Map

Picture 3.2 Free Navi Menu

In order to navigate with A-Navi System or to plan a route, you first of all have to enter a destination and then calculate a route.

In "Free Navi Map? (Picture 3.1) touch "Main Menu" to enter "Free Navi Menu" (Picture 3.2), and then touch "Go to" to enter the "Search Menu" (Picture 3.3).

Picture 3.3 Search Menu

In Search Menu, A-Navi System provides you six different ways of specifying an address, city, POI(Point of Interest) and other locations which you can select as start or destination. This chapter will detail the operation steps one by one.
7-52 Infotainment System

1. Search destination by address

**Picture 3.4 Address Search**
For example: No.25, Senkenberganlage, Frankfurt, Germany
1. Touch "Address Search" on "Search Menu" screen;
   • In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.4), touch "Country" to enter the "Country Search" screen (Picture 3.5).

**Picture 3.5 Country Search**
2. Select one among European countries;
   • In "Country Search" Screen, the default country is the recent search country "Germany". You could touch ▼ or ▲ to browse country list and select one among 41 European countries.

**Picture 3.6 City Search**
3. In order to specify the destination, first enter city name, and select the desired city;
   • You could enter the name of the city, or the prefix, and the system will automatically list all cities matching the input letters.
   • Touch the desired city and touch "OK" to confirm the city selection. The system returns to the "Address Search" screen (Picture 3.7).
4. Now enter the road name, and select the desired road;
   • In "Address Search" screen, touch the Road input field and enter "Road Search" screen.

5. Enter the house number;
   • After specifying the road, touch the field of "click here and search house number" to enter the House No screen.
7-54 Infotainment System

Picture 3.10 Enter House No.
- Enter house number on keyboard and touch "OK" to return "Address Search" screen.
If the house number you entered does not exist, the system will regard the first result as default position.

Picture 3.11 Check Location on map
6. Tap "On map" to check the location of input address or directly tap "OK" and go to "Route Plan".
- Now you can touch "On Map" to check the location of the specified address on map.
- Then touch "OK", the system will enter "Route Plan" screen to start navigating.

Picture 3.12 Route Plan
- In Route Plan screen, you can touch "Go" to start navigating, or start simulating navigation by touching "Simulate".
Alternative way is to locate by crossroad.
Options: after specify the road, then directly select the crossroad.
In "Address Search" screen, touch the Crossroad input field and enter "Crossroad" screen. It displays a list of available crossroads along the "Senkenberganlage". Then select the desired crossroad and touch "On Map" to view the virtual road location.

You also could search the crossroad by entering the name or the prefix, and the system will automatically list all roads matching the search criteria. Highlight the name of the desired road and touch "OK" to return to the "Address Search" screen (Picture 3.14).

A point of interest (POI) is a location that a user may find useful and interesting. POI locations are marked on the map with special icons.

A-Navi System provides 23 categories of POIs, such as accommodation, petrol station, restaurants, sights, etc. POIs of the same category shares the same icon. If you save your own POI or favourite or address, you can select an icon for your own.
7-56 Infotainment System

Picture 3.16 POI Menu
A-Navi System provides three ways to search POI: search POI near current position, search POI in city and search POI by telephone number.

(1) Search POI in city
For example: Terminal 1, Frankfurt

Picture 3.17 Specify the country
1. Touch "POI in City" in "POI Menu" screen;
   - System will enter "Country Search" screen (Picture 3.17);
   - In "Country Search" Screen, the default country is the recent search country "Germany". You could touch \( \bigcup \) or \( \bigtriangleup \) to browse country list and select one among 41 European countries.

Picture 3.18 Specify the city
2. Then enter city and select one city among results;
   - you can enter the whole city name or the prefix on keyboard, system will automatically list all matched results.
   - Touch "OK" and enter "POI Category Selection" screen.
   If you want to change city, touch \( \rightarrow \) to return "City Search" screen.
3. Now select the POI category;
   • Once you confirm POI category, then touch "Next" and enter "POI Search" screen.

4. Select a POI among results or enter the name of desired POI;
   • In the "POI Search" screen, the system will automatically list POIs around the city default position. You could select the desired one or enter the name on keyboard.
   • When the POI is specified, you could touch "On Map" to check the POI location.

5. Check the location of the POI;
   • touch \( \rightarrow \) to return "POI in City" screen.
7-58 Infotainment System

(2) Search POI near current position

"POI near Current Position" displays 100 POIs at most around your current position from near to far. Please notice that: When GPS fixed, "current position" is the place where your vehicle is located. When GPS does not fix, "current position" is the latest GPS-fixed location.

Picture 3.22 Route Plan Screen

6. Touch "OK" confirm the POI selection and enter "Route Plan" screen.
   • Once you have finished the POI search, touch "OK" and the system will automatically enter "Route Plan" screen (Picture 3.22) and the POI will be displayed in the destination list.

Picture 3.23 POI Menu Screen

1. Select POI near current position;
   • Select "POI near Current Position" in POI Menu and enter "POI Category Selection" screen.
2. Select one POI category.

   - You could touch ▼ or △ to view more categories. When you confirm the selection, touch "Next" and system enter "Nearest POI list". If you are not sure of the category, you can select "All POI", then the system will display POIs of all categories near current position.

3. Select one POI among results and touch "OK" to enter "Route Plan" screen.

   In "Nearest POI List" screen, you could:
   A. select one POI (see P3.25);
   B. touch keyboard to enter POI name or the prefix (see P3.26).
   C. check POI location on map (see P3.27);
7-60 Infotainment System

1. Touch "POI Search by Phone" on "POI Menu" screen.
   - System will enter "City Search" screen (Picture P 3.29).

2. Select one country;
   - In "Country Search" Screen, the default country is the recent search country "Germany". You could touch \( \downarrow \) or \( \uparrow \) to browse country list and select one among 41 European countries.

3. Enter the city name and choose the desired city;
   - You can enter the city name or the prefix, and the system will automatically display all the matching results.
   - Select the desired city and touch "OK" to enter "Phone No Search" screen.
Infotainment System

3. Select destination in recent destinations

A-Navi System saves 50 recent destinations at most so that you can access them quickly next time.

Picture 3.31 Enter POI Phone No.

4. Enter Telephone number and select one POI in results.
   - System automatically displays City Code and POIs near the default city centre.
   - Enter telephone on keyboard and touch "OK" to enter "Route Plan" screen.

Picture 3.32 Search Menu Screen

1. Touch "Recent Destination" on "Search Menu" screen.
   - In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.32), touch "Recent Destinations" to enter the "Recent Destination" screen (Picture 3.33).

Picture 3.33 Recent Destination List

2. Select one destination you desire.
   - Select the recent destination you want to set as destination and touch "OK".
   - Options: Touch "On Map" to check the location of destination

3. Touch "OK" and enter "Route Plan" screen.
7-62 Infotainment System

When successfully operated, the system will automatically return to the "Route Plan" screen and display the selected one in the destination list.

- Return to last screen.

Delete: Delete one destination.

On Map: touch and display chosen destination on map.

OK: Confirm the selected destination.

△: touch and enter last screen. Grey button means this function disabled.

▽: touch and enter next screen.

4. Select a point on map as destination

A-Navi System supports setting a destination by scrolling the map to the desired location.

Picture 3.34 Search Menu Screen

1. Touch "Map" on "Search Menu screen";
   • The system enter the "Map Search" screen (Picture 3.35).

Picture 3.35 Search destination on Map

2. Scroll the map and tap on one point on map;
   • On the "Map Search" screen (Picture 3.35), you can find places that you are interested in by zooming in/out or moving the map;
   • Meanwhile, you can touch on the POI or road to view its information (Picture 3.36).
5. Search a destination by coordinates

If you know the geographic coordinates of your destination, you can navigate to the desired location by entering Coordinates.

Picture 3.36 Check POI info on Map

3. Touch "OK" and enter "Route Plan" screen.
   • After you find your destination, touch "OK" to add it as a destination.

Picture 3.37 Search Menu Screen

1. Touch "Coordinates" on "Search Menu" screen;
   • In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.37), select "Coordinates" to enter the "Coordinates Input" screen (Picture 3.38).

Picture 3.38 Degree Format

2. Touch "Format" to change the type of coordinates;
   A-Navi System supports two kinds of coordinate format inputs: Degree Format (Picture 3.38) and Digital Format (Picture 3.39). You can touch the "Format" button to switch between these two formats.

3. Enter the coordinates and touch "OK".
7-64 Infotainment System

6. Select a destination in address book

You can save your home address and other favourite places in the Address Book.

Picture 3.40 Search Menu Screen
1. Touch "Address Book" on "Search Menu" screen;
   • In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.40), select "Address Book" to enter the "Address Book" screen.

Picture 3.39 Digital Format
In the Degree format, touch the "Lon" (Longitude) input area (Picture 3.38). You should input "E" (East Longitude) or "W" (West Longitude) before you input the degree number of the longitude. Before inputting the degree number of the latitude, you should input "N" (North Latitude) or "S" (South Latitude).

In the Digital format, you should input "—" (West Longitude/South Latitude) before you input the digital number of the longitude or the latitude.

Picture 3.41 Address Book Screen
2. Select one Address or POI and touch "OK".
   • Select one address you want to set as destination and touch "OK".

When successfully operated, the system will automatically return to the "Route Plan" screen and display the selected one in the destination list.
7. UK postcode

1. Touch "UK Postcode" on "Search Menu" screen;
   - In the "Search Menu" screen (Picture 3.42), select "UK Postcode" to enter the "Postcode Input" screen (Picture 3.43).

2. Enter UK Postcode and touch OK;

3. Select the desired postcode;

Picture 3.42 Search Menu Screen

Picture 3.43 Postcode Input Screen

Picture 3.44 Postcode Result
7-66 Infotainment System

4. Check the location on map.

8. Go home
A-Navi System enables you to navigate directly to a specified home address in an easy and efficient way. In the "Main Menu" (Picture 3.46), select "Go Home" and the system will automatically start navigating to the position of My Home.

- If the place of My Home has not been specified, when you touch "Go Home", the system will prompt as Picture 3.46.

- Touch "Yes", the system enters "Search Menu" screen to set up home address.
After specifying home address, the system enters "Route Plan" screen. Please refer to "Route Plan" operation details.

1. Destination management
   (1) Add or delete destination(s)
   A-Navi System allows you to add up to two waypoints and destinations. Usually the start point is the GPS-fixed current position.
   + Add: touch it and enter "Search Menu" to search waypoint/destination.
   - Delete: touch it and the highlight waypoint/destination in yellow is deleted.

   (2) Change the sequence of destination
   ↑: touch it to move up the highlight waypoint/destination.
   ↓: touch it to move down the highlight waypoint/destination.
7-68  Infotainment System

Grey key means the function is disabled.

(3) Display destination on map

In "Route Plan" screen, touch "On Map" and enter the map location of the highlight waypoint/destination. Here it allows you:

A. To pin on the map and check information of the waypoint/destination.
B. To zoom out/in;
C. To draw the map in all directions

2. Route options

A-Navi System offers you optimised settings of navigation. These settings are the basis parameters for calculating the route.

Touch "Options" on "Route Plan" screen and enter "Route Options" screen(Picture 4.3).

A-Navi System enable user to select road type and routing style according to different navigation situations. The default setting is Quickest Route and Use of Motorway, Use of Ferries and Allow Tolls. You may touch each parameter to change the mode or style.

Road type:
- Use of Motorway: most use of motorway
- Use of Motorway: least use of motorway
- Use of Ferries: most use of ferries
- Use of Ferries: least use of ferries
- Avoid Toll Roads
- Avoid Toll Roads: allow toll roads

Routing style:
Fastest Time: calculates a quickest possible route and you could travel at or near speed limit. Shortest Distance: takes you to your
destination using the most direct route possible. Therefore you travel the minimum kilometres.

🎉: touch and return to "Route Plan" screen.

✅: touch to confirm route option settings and return "Route Plan" screen.

3. Select navigation mode

A-Navi System totally has three navigation modes as below:

**Route Navigation:** real-time navigation among start, waypoint and destination.

**Simulate Navigation:** lifelike simulation of the routing among start, waypoint and destination. It enables you to check POI or route information along the route. Simulate mode is mostly used when no GPS position is present.

**Free Navigation:** real-time navigation without destination when GPS position has been fixed.

**Route Navigation:** real-time navigation between start and destination when GPS position has been fixed.

In the "Route Plan" screen you can select between two modes: Route Navi (Navigation) (Picture 4.4). or Simulate (Picture 4.5).

**Picture 4.5 Route Plan-Simulate**

- touch "Go" means you select route navigation mode. And the system will automatically enter "Route Calculating" screen and wait for GPS signal (Picture 4.5)
7-70 Infotainment System

**Picture 4.6 Calculating route**
Before route calculation finishes, you can touch the "Cancel" button at any time to end the operation.

**Picture 4.7 System Prompt**
- In Route Plan screen, touch "Simulate" and system will prompt that would you like to change the starting point? If yes, system will enter "Search Menu". If No, system will enter Picture 4.6.

**Picture 4.8 Start Navigating**
- After route calculation and when GPS position has been fixed, the system will begin navigating.
- Start navigation.

**Navigation**
After selecting destination and planning route, the system calculates the optimised route and start navigation.

All the information you need for driving is provided clearly and comprehensively in the Route Navi Map. Meanwhile, you can set
additional navigation settings or do other possible navigation operations on Route Navi Menu.

Picture 5.1 Route Navi Map

- On "Route Navi Map" screen, Touch Main menu to enter Route Navi Menu.

Picture 5.2 Route Navi Menu

1. Map options

Picture 5.3 Map Options

You can access Map Options both from Free Navi Menu and Route Navi Menu.
7-72 Infotainment System

Map Options functions are available as below:

**Auto-map rotation**

![Picture 5.4 North Up](image)

**Picture 5.4 North Up**

"North Up": Map is fixed to keep facing North and allows you to view driving conditions ahead.

**Picture 5.5 Heading Up**

"Heading Up": Rotates map according to the direction of movement.

**Picture 5.6 2D Map**
**Infotainment System**

**Picture 5.7 3D Map**
2D/3D: to switch the map between 2D and 3D style.

**Picture 5.8 Day Mode**

**Picture 5.9 Night Mode**

Day/Night: to switch the map background between day and night mode.

Motorway Signpost: turns the function to display motorway signpost on map on/off.

**Voice Guidance**
- NO voice guidance to instruct you at each turn.
- Voice guidance instructs you at each turn.

**Auto Zoom**
- Automatically adjusts the map scale according to driving speed and provides you a better view of the map.
- Manually adjust the map scale.

**Simulation Speed**
This allows you to set a driving speed during a simulated trip. The ranges of simulation speed are 50 km/h (mph), 100 km/h (mph),...
7-74 Infotainment System

150 km/h (mph), 200 km/h (mph), 250 km/h (mph) and 300 km/h (mph).

2. Route information

"Kennedyallee" for 2KM and make a right turn to "Morfelder LandstraBe".

3. Route plan

Route Information includes:
- Start, Destination, distance, next street name, distance between two turns, and turn type. For example: drive along "Kennedyallee" for 2KM and make a right turn to "Morfelder LandstraBe".

4. Detour

- In the "Route Navi Menu" screen, touch on "Detour" (Picture 5.2) to enter the "Detour" screen (Picture 5.12).
In the event of a traffic jam, you can estimate the distance to the blocking point and select an appropriate option, A-Navi System will calculate a detour.

**Picture 6.20 Detour**

- In the event of a traffic jam, you can estimate the distance to the blocking point and select an appropriate option, A-Navi System will calculate a detour.

**Picture 5.13 Recalculate**

When you think the current recommended route is not reasonable or you want to view another route between start and destination, you can touch "Recalculate" and the system enters route calculation screen.

**6. Terminate**

By touching the button "Terminate", the system will stop navigation and enter Free Navigation Map.

**7. Auto-routing**

With the consideration for driving safely, A-Navi System provides the auto-routing function that works under two circumstances:

- Auto starting navigation: After setting up a destination, touch on "Go" in the "Route Plan" screen and A-Navi System will automatically start the navigation. Below we will describe the procedure:

  1. Proceed to the next step if GPS signals are received. Otherwise, wait to receive GPS signals;
  2. Set the current GPS position as starting point, use the optimal route and start navigation.
7-76 Infotainment System

- Auto re-routing: If you have accidentally missed a recommended turning point about 100 meters, A-Navi System will activate re-routing module to calculate a new route. This guarantees you will never get lost.

Setup Menu

Setting

Picture 6.1 Free Navi Menu

Picture 6.2 Route Navi Menu

Settings open a selection of options allowing you to customise A-Navi System to your needs.

There are 11 setting items that can be accessed from "Settings" screen in Free Navi Menu or Route Navi Menu.
**Infotainment System** 7-77

1. **Volume**
   - Touch "Volume" in the "Settings" screen (Picture 6.3) to enter the "Volume" screen (Picture 6.5).
   - Touch "-" to adjust volume lower while touch "+" to make volume louder.
   - Touch  to make the system mute.
   
Once you have configured the settings, touch "OK" and the system will save your settings and return to the "Settings" screen.

2. **Safety alert**
   Speeding Alert warns you when you exceed the local road speed limit. This setting allows you to decide whether you want to receive speeding alerts or not.
7-78 Infotainment System

Picture 6.6 Safety Alert
- touch "Safety Alert" in the "Settings" screen (Picture 6.3) to enter the "Safety Alert" screen (Picture 6.6).

When speeding alert turns on, you can set speeding tolerance value to 0%, 5%, 10%, 15% and 20%.

3. Trace record
A-Navi System logs all positioning information received from GPS receiver during navigation. It draws the route taken on map, which enables you to review the historic track information when you re-launch the navigation system next time. This function is very useful when you drive in rural areas such as deserts or forests.

Picture 6.7 Trace Record
- By touching "Record On", user switch on trace record function; while touching "Record Off", user close trace record function.
- All trace record will be displayed on screen. If you select one record and touch "Show", it will display the trace record on map.

4. Address book management
A-Navi System can save up to 100 Address/POIs.

Picture 6.8 Address Book Management
- touch "Add" to enter "Search Menu" to search/add address/POI to Address Book.
- touch "Delete" to delete one record in Address Book.
- touch "On Map" to view the address location on map.
- touch "Edit" to enter "Address Book Edit" screen.
Picture 6.9 Address Book Edit
- touch the field you want to edit, and touch the keyboard after the cursor jumps to the field. You can touch "123" or "SYM" to switch input format.

Picture 10 POI Icon Selection
- touch 🏨 on Picture 6.9 to enter "POI Icon Selection" screen.

Day/night mode switch
A-Navi System manually or automatically adjusts the map colour scheme to the different brightness of the day or night.

Picture 6.10 Day/Night Mode Switch
- When "Manually" turns on, you could switch map mode between Day and Night. Manually switch function disable automatic switch, vice versa.
- When "Automatic" turns on, you need to set daytime. Daytime could be set to start from "5:00-9:00 AM" and end at "5:00-9:00 PM".
7-80 Infotainment System

6. Set home address

Picture 6.11 Settings

- Touch "Set Home Address" and enter "Search Menu" screen.

7. GPS status

Picture 6.12 GPS Status

- In the "Settings" screen (Picture 6.3), touch on "GPS Status" to display the "GPS status" screen (Picture 6.12).

In the "GPS status" screen, you can get following information:

1. Date: the date of a GPS position fix, e.g. 13-02;
2. Time: the time (always shown as GMT) of a GPS position fix, e.g. 15:20:34
5. HDOP: horizontal dilution of precision
6. Number of Satellites: 8
7. Longitude: the longitude of a GPS-fixed position, e.g. 8° 34'27E
8. Latitude: the latitude of a GPS-fixed position, e.g. 47° 24'51N;
8. Language

- You can select voice/program language by touching the language icon.
- Touch "OK" and return to Settings.

9. Right/left-hand drive

For better visibility, A-Navi System provides a different UI layout for Left/Right hand Drive cars.
7-82 Infotainment System

10. Measure unit

You can set the distance unit to be kilometres or miles.

11. Driving speed display ON/OFF

Generally vehicle speed displays on Navigation Map.

However vehicle speed is not always right because of GPS signal deviation. This function enables you to turn speed display function on/off.

If you see, "Display On" symbol vehicle speed doesn't display; touch to turn on vehicle speed display function and vice versa.

12. About

- About provide information about A-Navi System:
  A. Product Model
  B. Software Version
  C. Map Data Version
Appendix

1. Attention

It is not a system failure under the circumstances listed below:

Situations that can affect the GPS positioning:

- Sometimes, when you are driving on the motorway/viaduct, the floating point swings.
- When you are driving on a very steep road.
- When you are driving on spiral road, you will find that the floating point swings. It is nothing to do with the radius of the road and the driving speed of your vehicle. One reason might be that the real road condition may differ from the information on the electronic map.
- When you make a right/left turn to enter a road that has parallel roads nearby (less than 50 m distance), you might find that the floating point may go to another road.
- When driving on a wide road in a snaky line, you may experience that the floating point swings due to the mismatch of real distance.
- Before returning to ground level road after you have been driving in an underground car park or the spiral path of the multi-level car park, you will find that the floating point may swing. When your car is in a rotary elevator, the arrow of the floating point may not point to the right direction.
- Providing voice prompt at a branching path ahead.
- The guided distance may deviate from the actual distance rate.

When any of those situations occurs, the GPS satellite will automatically adjust the current position fix if you keep driving.

Problems caused by map files:

- When you return from a road which is newly constructed to a road recorded in map file, you may find floating point swings because the map file may not reflect the real road conditions. After you have driven for a while, the system will adjust to the right position using GPS signal information.
- No through way due to road closure or pedestrian path.
- Opening of a new road and closure of old road;
- Guide to a no-through road;
- Route re-computed again without changing the proposed route;
- Guide to a normal road instead of a viaduct, or vice versa;
- If there are only small lanes without a normal road near the destination, the system will only guide you to a place near to your destination;
7-84 Infotainment System

- Instruct you to make a U-turn;
- No indication at a branching road;
- Turning instruction mismatch with the real road condition;
- No indication of direction or voice prompt about entrance/exit while guiding on motorway/expressway.
- Schematic map may mismatch real road conditions.

Places having difficulties in receiving GPS signals
- In tunnels;
- Between high buildings;
- Under viaducts;
- In trees/forests;

When using an external GPS aerial, we recommend that you place it on the roof of the car. If there is a rack on the roof of your car, please make sure to separate the rack and the aerial.

GPS is managed by the US Department of Defense. It may purposely reduce the accuracy of the GPS signals so that the floating point may swing.

Use Notice
- The floating point may swing before the GPS signal is received when you turn the power on.
- The floating point may swing when you use the system the first time after installation.
- The system will automatically adjust its position and direction using GPS signals when the floating point mismatches real conditions.
## 2. POI icons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Search" /></td>
<td>All POI</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Government Office" /></td>
<td>Government Office</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Airport" /></td>
<td>Airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Medical" /></td>
<td>Medical</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Automotive" /></td>
<td>Automotive</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Museum" /></td>
<td>Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Business" /></td>
<td>Business</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Music Centre" /></td>
<td>Music Centre</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Company" /></td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Infotainment System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Restaurants" /></td>
<td>Restaurants</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Centre of Settlement" /></td>
<td>Centre of Settlement</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Accommodation" /></td>
<td>Accommodation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Finance" /></td>
<td>Finance</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Night Life" /></td>
<td>Night Life</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Parking" /></td>
<td>Parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Services" /></td>
<td>Services</td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Petrol Station" /></td>
<td>Petrol Station</td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Sights" /></td>
<td>Sights</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Infotainment System 7-87

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td>Recreation</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td>Shopping</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td>Police Station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td>Zoo</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td>Railway Station</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Icon" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phone

### Bluetooth

#### Pairing procedure

1. Press the Function button below "PAIRING" in the display.
2. Search & select the device name "CAR AUDIO" for Bluetooth on a phone.

The audio will display the name of the connected device for 3 seconds. The audio will return "Mode Selection" after connection procedure and "BT" will be displayed.
7-88 Infotainment System

Auto Connection

1. The audio will try to connect previous BT device automatically when infotainment system power on.
2. BT device which connects the audio set comes back to the audio unit after the BT device is out of 10m distance from an audio set, The audio set will try to connect the BT device automatically.

Incoming Call

The audio will display "Incoming Call..." for 3 seconds, then the audio will display "Incoming call number" until user presses the Function button below ANSWER or DECLINE in the display.

1. Press the Function button below ANSWER in the display, then the audio will be on line.
2. Press the Function button below DECLINE in the display, the audio unit will return to the last mode.

Hands-Free Phone

Taking calls

Making a call

1. Press the Function button below Call in the display.
2. Press the Function button below Last Call in the display.
The audio will display "Dialling..." and "Connected".

On Line

Press the Function button below MIC MUTE in the display when using the phone, microphone is mute.
Press the Function button below PRIVATE in the display or the POWER button during using a phone, the mode will change to "private mode".

Press the Function button below HANG UP in the display while using the phone. The audio will return to the last mode.
Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
- Heating and Ventilation System ........................................ 8-1
- Air Conditioning System ............................................... 8-3
- Automatic Climate Control System .................................. 8-6
- Electronic Climate Control System .................................... 8-13
- Auxiliary Heater ............................................................. 8-13

Air Vents
- Adjustable Air Vents ....................................................... 8-14
- Fixed Air Vents ............................................................... 8-14

Maintenance
- Air Intake ................................................................. 8-15
- Passenger Compartment Air Filter .................................... 8-15
- Air Conditioning Regular Operation ................................... 8-16
- Service ........................................................................... 8-17

Climate Control Systems

Heating and Ventilation System

Controls for:
1. Temperature control knob.
2. Air distribution mode knob.
3. Fan control knob.
4. Air conditioning (A/C) button.
5. Recirculation button.
6. Rear window and outside mirror defroster button.
8-2 Climate Controls

Temperature control knob

You may control the rate of airflow coming from the system by turning the fan speed control knob. Turn the knob clockwise to increase the fan speed and anti-clockwise to decrease the fan speed.

The fan control knob is adjustable from the off position through to step 4.

Fan control knob

You may control the rate of airflow coming from the system by turning the fan speed control knob. Turn the knob clockwise to increase the fan speed and anti-clockwise to decrease the fan speed.

The fan control knob is adjustable from the off position through to step 4.

Air distribution mode knob

Adjust the air distribution knob to the desired mode which you want to direct the air flow.

The air distribution knob can be set in one of five positions:

Front (€): This setting directs air through centre and side vents.

Bi-level (¥): Directs most of the air through the floor vents. Some of the air will also be directed to the windscreen defroster vents, side vents, and rear vents. Keep the
area under the front seats clear in order not to block the airflow to the rear compartment.

**Floor/Defrost ( ):** This mode directs most of the air through windscreen defroster vents, front door window defroster vents and the floor vents. A small amount of air is also directed to the side vents.

**Defrost ( ):** Directs most of the air through the windscreen and front door window defroster vents. A small amount of air is also directed to the side vents.

Press this button when driving in dusty conditions or to avoid traffic pollution or outside fumes, and when quick cooling or heating of the passenger area is required. The indicator light will illuminate and interior air will be recirculated. Pressing the recirculation mode button again will draw outside air into the passenger compartment. The indicator will go out.

Your windows may mist up if you use the recirculation mode for extended periods. If this happens, press the recirculation button again for the outside air mode.

### Air Conditioning System

The refrigeration unit of the air conditioning (A/C) system cools and removes moisture, dust, and pollen from the air inside your vehicle.

Even with the A/C on, your vehicle will produce warm air if you set the temperature control knob to warm.

**Note:** You may notice water drip under the engine compartment sometimes after driving with A/C on.
8-4 Climate Controls

This is normal because your cooling system removes the moisture from the air.

**Note:** Because the compressor of the cooling system shares the engine power, you may notice slight change in engine power and performance when the compressor operates.

### A/C button

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel.

**Caution**

Using your air conditioning (A/C) system while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic can cause engine overheating.

Watch temperature gauge.

Turn OFF the A/C if the gauge indicates engine overheating.

Vehicle can be damaged.

**To turn on the air conditioning (A/C):**

1. Start the engine.

2. Press A/C button. (Indicator light will come on to confirm the A/C is running)

3. Adjust fan speed.

**Note:** The air conditioning will not operate when the fan control knob is in the off position.

**To turn off the A/C:**

Press A/C button again. (Indicator light will go off to confirm the A/C is not running)

### Cooling

**Maximum cooling**

To achieve maximum cooling during hot weather and when your vehicle has been exposed to the sun for a long time:

1. Open windows slightly to let warm air escape.

2. Turn air conditioning (A/C) on. (Indicator illuminates)

3. Press recirculation button. (Indicator illuminates)
Climate Controls 8-5

4. Turn air distribution knob to FRONT mode (.Panel).
5. Turn temperature control knob all the way to the blue area for cooling.
6. Turn fan control knob to highest speed.

Normal cooling
1. Turn on the air conditioning (A/C) button. (Indicator illuminates)
2. Press recirculation button. (Indicator illuminates)
3. Turn the air distribution knob to FRONT (Panel) or BI-LEVEL (Panel).
4. Turn temperature control knob to blue area for cooling.
5. Adjust the fan control knob to the desired speed.

Heating

Maximum heating
Use the maximum heating mode for quick heating of the passenger area. Do not use it for lengthy periods because the interior air may become stale and the windows may mist up. To clear the windows, turn off the recirculation button to allow fresh air into the vehicle.

For maximum heating:
1. Turn off air conditioning (A/C). (Indicator goes off)
2. Press recirculation button. (Indicator goes off)
3. Turn air distribution knob to BI-LEVEL (Panel) or FLOOR (Panel).
4. Turn temperature control knob all the way to the red area for heating.
5. Turn fan control knob to maximum speed.

Normal heating
1. Turn off air conditioning (A/C). (Indicator goes off)
2. Turn off recirculation. (Indicator goes off)
3. Turn air distribution knob to FLOOR (Panel) or BI-LEVEL (Panel).
4. Turn temperature control knob to red area for heating.
5. Turn fan control knob to desired speed.

Ventilation

Bi-level
Use this setting on cool, but sunny days. Warmer air will flow into the floor area and cool, outside air will flow toward your upper body.

To use this setting:
1. Turn off recirculation button. (Indicator goes off)
2. Turn air distribution knob to BI-LEVEL (Panel).
8-6 Climate Controls

3. Adjust temperature control knob to the desired temperature.

4. Turn fan control knob to the desired speed.

Ventilation
To direct air through the centre and side vents:
1. Turn off air conditioning (A/C). (Indicator goes off)
2. Turn off recirculation. (Indicator goes off)
3. Turn the air distribution knob to FRONT (Y) or BI-LEVEL ()
4. Turn temperature control knob to blue area for cooling.
5. Turn fan control knob to desired speed.

Defrosting and demisting
To defrost the windscreen:
1. Turn the air distribution knob to DEFROST (\(\square\)).

Caution (Continued)
Do not use FLOOR/DEFROST (\(\square\)) or DEFROST (\(\square\)) in extremely humid weather when the temperature control knob is set to the blue area.
This can lead to an accident which can damage your vehicle and cause personal injuries.

Automatic Climate Control System
General description
Full automatic temperature control (FATC) system controls the interior temperature in your vehicle automatically and provides the greatest amount of comfort in the interior regardless of the weather, outside temperature or season. It will achieve the desired temperature when you select the AUTO mode.

Caution
The difference between the outside air and the temperature of the windshield can cause the windows to mist up, thereby restricting your front vision. (Continued)
The desired temperature is controlled by an in-car sensor signal, coolant temperature, sun sensor signal and the ambient temp sensor signal.

**Sunlight sensor**

Sunlight sensor is located in front of the windscreen defroster vents. This sensor detects sunlight when operating in AUTO mode.

**Caution**

Do not place stickers or other items over the sensor. Doing so could cause the sensor to malfunction.

**Temperature sensor**

Temperature information sampled from the interior of your car is used in establishing ventilation system requirements when operating in AUTO mode.

**Caution**

Do not place stickers over the temperature sensor as this will impair its function.
8-8 Climate Controls

Automatic temperature control
Climate Controls 8-9

1. Set temperature
2. Defroster indicator
3. Air distribution mode indicator
4. Air conditioning indicator
5. Outside temperature
6. Auto mode indicator
7. Outside air mode indicator
8. Recirculation mode indicator
9. Fan operation indicator
10. Fan speed indicator
11. Dual zone

When you operate your FATC in AUTO mode, the only thing you have to do is just set the desired temperature to your preference.

**AUTO button**

When the AUTO button is pressed, the interior temperature will be controlled automatically to reach the desired preset temperature. The system will control air distribution mode, fan speed, air conditioning and recirculation functions automatically.

AUTO mode indicator will appear in the DIC (Driver Information Centre) located in the centre of the instrument panel.

**To set the desired temperature**

Rotate the temperature control knob until the desired temperature is displayed.

Clockwise: The desired temperature will increase by 0.5°C (1°F).

Anti-clockwise: The desired temperature will decrease by 0.5°C (1°F).

You can set the desired temperature at your preference between 18°C and 28°C.

To set the desired temperature:

1. Rotate the temperature control knob clockwise or anti-clockwise to increase or decrease the temperature.
2. Set the desired temperature between 18°C and 28°C.

The system will automatically control the air distribution mode, fan speed, air conditioning, and recirculation functions to maintain the desired temperature.
8-10 Climate Controls

**Note:** When desired temperature is set at either "HI" (maximum) or "Lo" (minimum), the fan operates continuously at highest speed even after the interior temperature reaches the preset temperature.

Dual Zone: The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger.

Adjust the SYNC dial to increase or decrease the temperature for the passenger.

Dual Zone/Single Zone display on the DIC or the navigation screen can be switched by pressing the SYNC button each time.

Press the SYNC button during the Dual Zone mode to link all climate settings to the driver settings.

---

To turn off the system, press the OFF button.

**Manual control**

**A/C button**

Turns the air conditioning on or off. AUTO mode is cancelled and indicator will go off when this button is pressed.

The A/C indicator (olecular) will illuminate when the air conditioning is on.

Press the A/C button again to turn the A/C off, or press the OFF button to turn the entire system off.
Air distribution mode change

If the MODE button is pressed, AUTO mode is cancelled and the air distribution mode will be changed in the following sequence.

FRONT(➡️) → BI-LEVEL(➡️) → FLOOR(➡️) → FLOOR/DEFROST(➡️)

Recirculation mode button

Selects either outside air or recirculated inside air.

Fan speed control knob

Adjust the fan speed by rotating this knob. AUTO mode is cancelled when this knob is rotated.
8-12 Climate Controls

Defrosting

Press the DEFROST button (☀️) to defrost the windshield. The A/C and outside air mode are automatically turned on.

Adjust the fan speed using fan speed control knob.

This mode can be cancelled by pressing the defrost button again, air distribution mode knob or AUTO button.

AQS

AQS (Air Quality Sensor) automatically draws outside air into the passenger compartment or converts air mode into recirculation mode to cut off the exhaust gas from the outside and prevent contaminating air within the passenger compartment.

Press the AQS button to activate AQS mode. The indicator light on the button will come on.

To turn off the AQS mode, press the button again. The indicator light will go off to confirm the AQS is not activated.

Your windows may mist up if you use the AQS mode for extended periods. If this happens, turn off the AQS mode and turn to the outside air mode.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is always displayed in the DIC.
The temperature sensor is located in the front bumper area.
Due to its location, the displayed temperature can be affected by road or engine heat while slow driving or idling.

**Temperature unit change**
To change the temperature unit, do the followings:

1. Press SET button on the driver information centre for more than 2 seconds. The temperature unit will flash.
2. Press the Q or ▲ or ▼ button to change the temperature unit (°C ↔ °F).

**Electronic Climate Control System**

- Press to change the direction of the airflow.
- △ ● ◇ : Press to increase or decrease the fan speed.

**Auxiliary Heater**
This supplementary heater (diesel only) is an electrical air heating type and installed in the air conditioner module. This device improves the heating effect by increasing the temperature of flowing air into the passenger compartment.
8-14 Climate Controls

Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents

Side vents

You can direct air through both adjustable side vents toward either side of the front passenger area, or toward the side windows.

Centre vents

You can control the direction of airflow through both adjustable centre vents.

To shut off the centre vents and the side vents

Turn the wheel below or next to each vent outlet to block the airflow through the vents.

⚠️ Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Fixed Air Vents

Windscreen defroster vents

The windscreen defroster vents direct air onto the windscreen.

Floor vents

The floor vents direct air into the front foot area.

Front door window defroster vents

The front door window defroster vents direct air onto the side windows, mainly in the area near the outside mirror.
Rear vents
Cooled or heated air travels to the rear foot area through ducts underneath the front seats.

Maintenance

Air Intake
The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake.
Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter
The filter cleans dust, soot, pollen, spore from the air entering the vehicle through the air intake.

1. Remove the six screws from around the glove box.
2. Remove the glove box by gently pulling at the bottom.
3. Remove the filter cover screw.

4. Replace the air conditioner filter.

**Caution**

*Note:* When inserting new filter, make sure they are inserted to the correct airflow.

**Note:** We recommend that you consult an authorised repairer to replace the filter.

---

**Caution**

More frequent maintenance of the air filter is required if the driving circumstances are dusty roads, air pollution areas, and frequent unpaved roads. It makes the filter efficiency to be decreased and the bronchus to be bad effected.

**Air Conditioning Regular Operation**

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when outside temperature is low.
Service
For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system.

- Functionality and pressure test
- Heating functionality
- Leakage check
- Check of drive belts
- Cleaning of condenser and
- Evaporator drainage
- Performance check

⚠️ Caution

Use only correct refrigerant.

⚠️ Warning

Climate control systems are serviced by qualified personnel only. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.
Driving Information

Control of a Vehicle .......... 9-1

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Run-In .......... 9-2
Ignition Positions .......... 9-2
Starting the Engine .......... 9-3
Automatic Engine Start/Stop
Feature .......... 9-4
Parking .......... 9-6

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust .......... 9-6
Diesel Particulate Filter .......... 9-7
Catalytic Converter .......... 9-8

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission ...... 9-8
Transmission Display ...... 9-9
Selector Lever ...... 9-9
Fault ...... 9-12
Interruption of Power
Supply ...... 9-12

Manual Gearbox
Manual Gearbox ...... 9-14

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive ...... 9-15

Brakes
Brakes ...... 9-15
Antilock Brake
System (ABS) ...... 9-17
Parking Brake ...... 9-18

Ride Control Systems
Electronic Stability
Control (ESC) ...... 9-20

Cruise Control
Cruise Control ...... 9-24

Object Detection Systems
Ultrasonic Parking Assist ...... 9-26
Rear Vision
Camera (RVC) ...... 9-29

Fuel
Fuel Additives ...... 9-31
Fuel for Petrol Engines ...... 9-32
Fuel for Diesel Engines ...... 9-32
Filling the Tank ...... 9-33

Driving Information

Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.
Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Run-In

Use the following precautions for the first few hundred kilometres (miles) to improve the performance and economy of your vehicle and add to its long life:

- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Do not race the engine.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies. This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid quick starts, sudden accelerations, and prolonged high-speed driving in order to avoid damage to the engine and to conserve fuel.
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration in low gear.
- Do not tow any other vehicle.

Ignition Positions

Type 1

LOCK: Ignition off
ACC: Ignition off, steering wheel lock released
ON: Ignition on, preheating for diesel engine
START: Starting

Danger

Do not turn the key to LOCK or ACC position while driving. Vehicle and brake assistance would not operate, causing vehicle damage, personal injury or possibly death.

Caution

Do not leave the key in ACC or ON position for extended periods while the engine is not running. This will discharge the battery.
Starting the Engine

Starting engine with the ignition switch

- Turn the key to position ACC, move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Automatic transmission: Move gear lever to P or N.
- Do not accelerate.
- Diesel engine: turn the key to position ON for preheating until K goes out.
- Turn the key to position START, depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal then release when engine is running.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine, turn key back to LOCK.

Caution

Do not operate starter motor for more than 10 seconds at a time. If the engine does not start, wait 10 seconds before trying again. This will prevent starter motor damage.

Starting engine with the ignition control knob

- Manual gearbox: Operate clutch. Turn the ignition control knob to the START position, depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal then release when engine is running.
9-4 Driving and Operating

- Automatic transmission: Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

  If the vehicle has the keyless access system, your foot must be on the brake pedal to start the engine.

- Diesel engine: Turn the ignition control knob to the ON position for preheating until K goes out. Turn the ignition control knob to the START position.

  When the engine begins cranking, let go of the ignition control knob, it will return to the ON position.

  If ignition control knob does not turn, try pushing the knob in and turning again.

  If the transmitter is not in the vehicle or something is interfering with the transmitter, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) in the middle of the cluster will display ELECTRONIC KEY NOT DETECTED.

Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature

Stop-Start System

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emission. The engine turns off automatically when the vehicle is at low speed or standstill.

The engine will restart automatically as soon as the clutch is depressed.

Activation

The stop-start system is activated as soon as ignition is ON.

Deactivation

Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing the eco button.

The deactivation is indicated by the LED in the button going off.

Automatic Engine Stop

If the vehicle is at low speed or in standstill, activate the automatic engine stop as follows:

- Shift the gear lever to N
- Release the clutch pedal
Driving and Operating 9-5

The engine will be turned off while the ignition ON.

The engine stop is indicated by the needle on the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer.

During an automatic engine stop, the heating performance, power steering and brake performance will maintain.

Air conditioning system may or may not inhibit the stop and start system according to the cooling performance.

**Conditions for an automatic engine stop**

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated
- The bonnet is fully closed
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened
- The battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition
- The engine is warmed up
- The engine coolant temperature is not too low
- The ambient temperature is not too low or high
- The defrosting function is not activated
- Fan control knob of manual climate control is not in step 4 (max airflow)
- A/C button of automatic climate control is not pressed
- The brake vacuum is sufficient

- The vehicle has moved since the last automatic engine stop

**Restart of the engine by the driver**

Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

The engine start is indicated by the needle on the idle speed position in the tachometer.

If the gear lever is shifted out of N before depressing the clutch first, \( \) illuminates.

The light goes out as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

**Restart of the engine by the stop-start system**

If one of the following conditions occurs during engine stop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system.

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated
- The bonnet is opened
9-6 Driving and Operating

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened
- The engine temperature is too low
- The battery is low
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient
- The vehicle starts to move
- The ambient temperature is too low or high
- The defrosting function is activated
- Fan control knob of manual climate control is in step 4 (max airflow)
- A/C button of automatic climate control is pressed

Parking

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply parking brake.
- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or p position before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
- If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close windows.
- Lock the vehicle and activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Engine Exhaust

⚠️ Warning
Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:
- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or exhaust pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)
Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

  If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:
  - Drive it only with the windows completely down.
  - Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

  Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Diesel Particulate Filter

The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving. The filter is cleaned by burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take more than 15 minutes. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If the control indicator (DPF lamps) illuminates or flashes, it is necessary to activate the cleaning process of Diesel Particulate Filter by continuing driving safely until DPF lamps off at the cluster. In case, constant driving will be better for cleaning process.

Warning

Be sure the following precautions are taken because the exhaust parts are raised to high temperature during regeneration of DPF.

- Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not place your vehicle over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.
- Turn the ignition OFF as soon as your vehicle enters a garage.
- Do not go near the hot exhaust parts including exhaust tail pipe.
9-8 Driving and Operating

Catalytic Converter
The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gas.

- **Caution**
  - Use of fuel with low quality or too low octane number may damage the engine, the catalytic converter or electronic components.
  - Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a repairer as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

- **Caution**
  - Don't touch the catalytic converter during engine operating and it can be possible to touch the catalytic converter after cooling down the catalytic converter because the catalytic converter is very hot so the skin (i.e. hand or body) can be burned: cooling down condition - cool down over two hours under ambient temperature after engine stop.

Automatic Transmission
The automatic transmission permits manual gear shifting (manual mode) or automatic gear shifting (automatic mode).

The automatic transmission is an electronically controlled six-speed transmission.

Sixth gear is overdrive.

Starting the vehicle
1. After warming up the engine, continue to press the brake pedal while shifting the gear lever to either the R, D position.

- **Caution**
  - Do not shift between D (Drive) and R (Reverse) or P (Park) while the vehicle is moving.
  - This will cause damage to your transmission and personal injury.
2. Release the parking brake and the brake pedal.
3. Slowly press the accelerator pedal to set the vehicle in motion.

Transmission Display

Type 1
It is located in the instrument cluster.
It indicates the selected gear or transmission mode.

Type 2
If your vehicle has a DIC in the middle of the cluster, the selected gear or transmission mode display will be shown on the bottom of the DIC.

Selector Lever

P (PARK): Locks the front wheels. Select P only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied.

R (REVERSE): Reverse transmission position. Select R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N (NEUTRAL): Neutral gear position.
D: This drive position is for all normal driving conditions. Allows the transmission to shift into all 6 forward gears.

**Caution**

- Do not accelerate while engaging a gear.
- Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
- When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.
- Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.
- Turn off the engine, apply the parking brake, and remove the ignition key when leaving the vehicle.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.

**Shifting between gear positions**

Depress the brake pedal and push release button to shift.

Shifts that require you to push the release button are indicated by black arrows.

Push the release button to shift.

White arrows indicate shifts that do not require you to push the release button.

Shift freely.

Whether your vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pulling the gear lever from the "D" position to the left into
the manual gate. To return to "D" range operation, push the gear lever back to the right into the main gate.
In manual mode, moving the gear lever backwards and forwards can make rapid gearshifts simple. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the manual mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

**UP(+)**: Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

**DOWN(-)**: Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

**Note**: In manual mode, only the five forward gears can be selected.
To reverse or park the vehicle, move the gear lever to the "R" or "P" position as required.

**Note**: In manual mode, downward shifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.

To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the gear lever is operated.
Before driving away from a stop on a slippery road, push the gear lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving away on a slippery road. Pull the gear lever to the - (down) to shift back to 1st gear.

---

**Engine braking**
To help use the braking effect of engine compression when driving on a long downhill select manual mode downshift to a lower gear in a sequential order.

**Caution (Continued)**
Downshifts must be made carefully in accordance with the vehicle's speed.

**Warning**
Do not downshift transmission by two or more gear positions at a time. This prevents damage to your transmission or loss of control and personal injuries.

**Note**: Use of engine compression during long mountainous descents may prolong the life of your brakes.
9-12 Driving and Operating

Rocking the vehicle
Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow.
Move the gear lever between D and R in a repeat pattern.
Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking
After stop the vehicle with pressing the brake pedal, engage P and apply the parking brake and then remove ignition key.

Kickdown
For faster acceleration press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

Fault
In the event of a fault, the malfunction indicator light illuminates. The transmission no longer shifts automatically nor manually because it is locked in a certain gear.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a repairer.

Interruption of Power Supply
In the event of an interruption of power supply, the gear lever cannot be moved out of the P position.
If the battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads.
If the battery is not the cause of the fault, release gear lever and remove ignition key from ignition lock.

Release gear lever
Before shifting from park (P), the ignition must be ON and you must depress the brake pedal all the way down. If you cannot shift out of P with the ignition ON and the brake pedal depressed:
1. Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
2. Depress and hold the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
3. Remove the rubber mat.

4. Insert and press the ignition key into the slot.

5. Shift to neutral (N).

6. Remove the key from the slot.

7. Reinstall the rubber mat.

8. Have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible.

**Warning**

To help prevent damage to the transmission, observe the following precautions:

Do not press the accelerator pedal while shifting from P or N to R or a forward gear.

To do so may not only damage the transmission, but could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Use D as much as possible.

Never shift to P or R while the vehicle is in motion.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

When stopping the vehicle on an uphill gradient, do not hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal. Use the foot brake.

Press the brake pedal when shifting from P or N to R or a forward gear.

Otherwise transmission could be damaged or vehicle could move unexpectedly, causing driver to lose control of the vehicle, resulting in personal injury or damage to the vehicle or other property.
9-14 Driving and Operating

Fuel Economy Mode

The vehicle may have a fuel economy mode. When engaged, fuel economy mode can improve the vehicle's fuel economy.

Pressing the eco button by the shift lever will engage fuel economy mode. When activated, the eco light in the instrument cluster will come on.

See Fuel Economy Light on page 5-24.Pressing the button a second time will turn fuel economy mode off.

When fuel economy mode is on:
- The transmission will up shift sooner, and downshift later.
- The torque converter will lock-up sooner, and stay on longer.
- The accelerator pedal will be less sensitive.
- The vehicle's computers will more aggressively shut off fuel to the engine under deceleration.

Do not use fuel economy mode while towing.

Manual Gearbox

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the gear lever into gear, and slowly release the clutch.

To shift into reverse, press the button on the back of the gear lever knob while moving the gear lever into the reverse position.

Do not ride the clutch unnecessarily.
During operation, depress the clutch pedal completely.
Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

Manual Gearbox

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the gear lever into gear, and slowly release the clutch.

To shift into reverse, press the button on the back of the gear lever knob while moving the gear lever into the reverse position.

Do not ride the clutch unnecessarily.
During operation, depress the clutch pedal completely.
Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.
Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

If your vehicle has active on demand all-wheel drive (AWD), the AWD system operates automatically without any action required by the driver. If the front drive wheels begin to slip, the rear wheels will automatically begin to drive the vehicle as required. There may be a slight engagement noise during hard use but this is normal.

The AWD warning light \( \Box \) flashes when AWD system is temporarily disabled. If the light flashes briefly, and then goes out, this is normal and does not indicate a system fault. However if the light flashes continuously, you should consult a repairer to repair the problem as soon as possible.

The light comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the AWD system. If it happens, your vehicle should be serviced by a repairer.

Brakes

The braking system is designed for braking performance under a wide range of driving conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with front and rear disc brakes and a dual circuit braking system.

If one brake circuit should fail, the vehicle can still be stopped with the remaining circuit, however, stopping distance will be increased and more brake pedal pressure will be required.

Warning

If one of the circuits fail, the brake pedal must be pressed with greater pedal pressure and the braking distance is increased.

Have the brake system checked and repaired by a repairer immediately.
9-16 Driving and Operating

**Warning**

If the brake pedal can be pressed further than normal, the brakes may be in need of repair.
Consult a repairer immediately.

**Caution**

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal.
Doing so will accelerate wear of the brake components. The brakes may also become overheated, resulting in longer braking distance and an unsafe condition.

Centre high-mounted brake lamp (or with brake lamps) flashes several times to alert drivers coming behind your vehicle on the following condition:
- Although brakes are operated, a vehicle runs more than a certain speed.
- When ABS is working at that time.

**Wet brakes**

Driving through water or washing your car can get the brake components wet.
To restore normal braking:
1. Check behind you for other vehicles.
2. Keep a safe forward speed with plenty of space to your rear and sides.
3. Gently apply brakes until normal performance is restored.

**Overheated brakes**

Braking excessively when going down a long, steep hill can temporarily overheat the brakes. Shift to a lower gear when going down hills. Do not continuously apply the brakes.

After driving through deep water, washing the vehicle, or using the brakes excessively when going down a steep hill, the brakes can temporarily lose their stopping power. This may be due to wet brake components or overheating.
If your brakes temporarily lose their stopping power because of overheating:
Shift to a lower gear when going down hills. Do not continuously apply the brakes.

(Continued)
Warning (Continued)

If your brakes temporarily lose their power because of wet brake components, the following procedure will help restore their normal performance:

1. Check behind you for other vehicles.
2. Keep a safe forward speed with plenty of space to your rear and sides.
3. Gently apply the brakes until normal performance is restored.

Warning

When brake noise is heard, do not continue to drive your vehicle. (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

This may indicate the brake pads need to be repaired or replaced. Driving with worn brake pads could result in a collision and personal injury.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking. ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process. For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal. ABS operation can be recognised by vibration and the noise of the ABS process.

To stop the vehicle optimally, keep pressing the brake pedal even if the brake pedal vibrates. Do not decrease your power when pressing the brake pedal.

When you start the vehicle after ignition is switched on, you may hear mechanical sounds. This is normal so that the ABS is ready. See Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-21

Fault

Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than (Continued)
9-18  Driving and Operating

**Warning (Continued)**

normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a repairer.

**Parking Brake**

The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB). The switch for the EPB is in the centre console. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is OFF. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB system when the engine is not running.

**EPB Apply**

The EPB can be applied any time the vehicle is stopped. The EPB is applied by momentarily lifting up on the EPB switch. Once fully applied, the parking brake status light (P) will be on. While the brake is being applied, the status lamp will flash until full apply is reached. If the light does not come on or remains flashing, you need to have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the parking brake status light is flashing. Consult a repairer.

See Brake System Warning Light on page 5-20.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is in motion, a chime will sound. The vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held in the up position. Releasing the EPB switch during the deceleration will release the parking brake. If the switch is held in the up position until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The system has a parking brake status light (P) and a parking brake warning light.

See Brake System Warning Light on page 5-20. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released. Before leaving the vehicle, check the parking brake status lamp to insure the parking brake is applied.
If the parking brake status light (P) flashes continuously, the EPB is only partially applied or released, or there is a problem with the EPB. If this light flashes continuously, release the EPB, and attempt to apply it again. If this light continues to flash, do not drive the vehicle. Consult a repairer. If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To apply the EPB when this light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it in the up position. Full application of the parking brake by the EPB system may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on.

Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light (P) remains on. If the parking brake warning light is on, consult a repairer. If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release
To release the EPB, place the ignition in the ON/START position, apply and hold the brake pedal, and push down momentarily on the EPB switch. If you attempt to release the EPB without the brake pedal applied, a chime will sound and the press brake pedal light (P) will appear.

The EPB is released when the parking brake status light (P) is off.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To release the EPB when this light is on, push down on the EPB switch and hold it in the down position. EPB release may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light (P) is off. If the light is on, consult a repairer.

Note: Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.
9-20 Driving and Operating

Automatic EPB Release
The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

⚠️ Warning
If the parking brake is not set properly, the vehicle may move suddenly. See a repairer if an adjustment is required.

⚠️ Caution
Do not drive with the parking brake on. This can cause your rear parking brakes to overheat or wear out prematurely. You may have to replace them, and you could damage other parts of your vehicle.

⚠️ Caution
Do not park or operate your vehicle over combustible materials. They could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite.

Ride Control Systems

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

⚠️ Caution
If you choose to install winter tyres on your vehicle, be sure to only use winter tyres that are recommended by a repairer.

Using the wrong winter tyres may adversely affect Stability System performance. See authorised repairer for details regarding winter tyre availability and proper tyre selection.

The ESC system is an electronic vehicle stability control system and driving safety supplementary system that helps to avoid dangerous situations by applying brakes on the wheels or the engine torque to compensate vehicle stability when it is extremely unstable under
conditions such as sharp cornering or quick lane change. The ESC function automatically works when your vehicle is in a very unstable condition. The ESC system does not work under normal driving conditions.

When the ignition is switched ON, the ESC active & warning lamp and ESC off indicator come on and go off after about 4 seconds.

The ESC active & warning lamp flashes while ESC is operating and illuminates to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system. If this condition occurs, consult a repairer as soon as possible.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light* on page 5-22.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hydrauluc brake assist (HBA) function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When the ESC system recognises any emergency situations requiring hard braking, it automatically delivers an extra high braking pressure to the wheels.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active rollover protection (ARP) function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This function is a part of the ESC system. When your vehicle moves in an extremely unstable manner, this function helps the vehicle maintain normal stability.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traction control system (TCS) function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCS prevents the driving wheels from spinning, irrespective of the road condition and tyre grip. As soon as at least one driving wheel starts to spin, the engine output is reduced and the spinning wheel is braked. This improves the vehicle's directional control and driving power, particularly on snow and ice as well as on wet or slippery roads.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trailer stability assist (TSA) function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Snaking road trains are very difficult to handle. This function detects snaking and then reduces the trains velocity until the oscillation stops. The deceleration is obtained by reducing the engine torque and increasing the pressure in all wheel brakes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hill start assist (HSA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The system helps prevent rollback when driving away on hill.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>trailer stability assist (TSA) function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Snaking road trains are very difficult to handle. This function detects snaking and then reduces the trains velocity until the oscillation stops. The deceleration is obtained by reducing the engine torque and increasing the pressure in all wheel brakes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hill start assist (HSA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The system helps prevent rollback when driving away on hill.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hill start assist (HSA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When depressing the accelerator pedal after releasing the brake pedal on hill, the brakes remain on for approximately 2 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Caution**

If the ESC active & warning lamp comes on, the ESC system is defective. Make sure to consult a repairer as soon as possible.
9-22 Driving and Operating

ESC off button

ESC can be deactivated by pressing the ESC OFF button on the centre of the instrument panel. If you push the ESC OFF button again when the ESC function is deactivated (ESC off indicator is turned on), the system will be resumed and the ESC off indicator on the instrument panel goes out by resuming the ESC system.

Descent control system (DCS)

When travelling down steep gradients, this function allows you to travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal and allows you to concentrate on steering. This convenient function is for only driving down steep gradients.

To activate DCS, press the DCS button on the centre of the instrument panel. When the button is pressed, DCS is ready for use.

⚠️ Caution

When the ESC system activates to correct the vehicle stability, reduce the speed and pay extra attention to the road.

The ESC system is only a supplementary device for the vehicle. When the vehicle exceeds its physical limits, it cannot be controlled. Do not rely on the system. Keep driving safely.

When the ESC is applied, you may hear some noise or feel a vibration from the brake pedal or other relevant systems. They are caused by pressure changes in the relevant systems.
The green DCS active indicator comes on. While DCS is operating, DCS active indicator will flash.

To deactivate DCS, press the DCS button again. DCS active indicator will go off.

The amber DCS not ready & warning lamp flashes to indicate that DCS is not ready for conditions to operate and comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system.

See Descent Control System Light on page 5-21.

**Caution**

If the amber DCS not ready and warning lamp comes on, the DCS is malfunctioning. Make sure to consult a repairer as soon as possible.

---

**DCS operational conditions**

1. The DCS button should be pressed (The green DCS active indicator comes on).
2. A certain steep gradient.
3. Driving below about 50 km/h (31.1 mph).
   
   (DCS is not operated when the vehicle speed is over 50 km/h (31.1 mph) in spite of pressing DCS button. DCS operates again when the vehicle speed decreases below 30 km/h (18.6 mph) after it is over 50 km/h (31.1 mph))
4. The accelerator or brake pedal is not depressed.
   
   (DCS is not operated only when the accelerator or brake pedal is applied.)

---

**Caution**

DCS is designed for driving on off-road steep gradients.

Unnecessary usage of DCS can cause malfunctions in the brake system or ESC. Do not use DCS when driving on normal roads.

It is normal to have strong vibrations and noise from the brake system when DCS is applied.
9-24 Driving and Operating

Cruise Control

If your vehicle has cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

When you apply your brakes or press the button, the cruise control shuts off.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the optional traction control system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may turn the cruise control back on.

Caution
Cruise control can be dangerous where you can't drive safely at a steady speed. So, don't use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tyre traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Don't use cruise control on slippery roads.

Setting cruise control
1. Press the button, located on the right side of the steering wheel, to turn cruise control on.
2. Accelerate to the speed you want.
3. Press the SET/- button and release it. An indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will come on to show you that the cruise control is on.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Caution
If you leave your cruise control on when you're not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you don't want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

Resuming a set speed
Suppose you set your cruise control at a desired speed and then you apply the brake pedal or press the button. This, of course, shuts off
the cruise control. But you don’t need to reset it. Once you’re going about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, you can tap the RES/+ button. You’ll go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.

If you hold the RES/+ button longer, the vehicle will keep going faster until you release the button, apply the brake pedal or press the button. So unless you want to go faster, do not hold the RES/+ button.

**Increasing speed while using cruise control**

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to a higher speed. Press the SET/- button, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. You will now cruise at the higher speed.

- Press the RES/+ button. Hold it there until you get up to the speed you want, and then release the button. To increase your speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/+ button and then release it. Each time you do this, your vehicle will go about 2 km/h (1.2 mph) faster. The accelerate feature will only work after you turn on the cruise control by pressing the SET/- button.

**Reducing speed while using cruise control**

There are two ways to reduce your speed while using cruise control:

- Press the SET/- button until you reach the lower speed you want, then release it.

- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/- button. Each time you do this, you will go about 2 km/h (1.2 mph) slower.

**Passing another vehicle while using cruise control**

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle will slow down to the cruise control speed you set earlier.

**Using cruise control on hills**

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up a steep hill, you may have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brake pedal takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and don't use cruise control on steep hills.
9-26 Driving and Operating

Disengaging cruise control
There are several ways to turn off the cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal or press the \( \mathbf{I} \) button, or press the clutch pedal, if you have a manual transaxle.
- Press the \( \mathbf{I} \) button on the cruise control pad.

Erasing speed memory
When you turn off the cruise control or the ignition, your cruise control set speed memory is erased.

Object Detection Systems

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

Front and rear parking assist
The parking assistance system assists the driver during forward and backward movement of the vehicle by alarming if any object is sensed between the vehicle and the obstacle.

The system registers distance using sensors in each of the front and rear bumpers.

This system is automatically turned on whenever the ignition switch is ON.

Note: The front and rear sensors are activated together when shifting the gear to "R" position.

If the shifting lever is not in "R" position, only front sensor is activated.

If the vehicle approaches an obstacle to the front or rear, a series of signals sound. The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance is reduced.

The system is deactivated when the vehicle's speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph).

To activate the system, press the park assist button on the instrument panel. The indicator button will light up.
Pressing the button again deactivates the system and the indicator light turns off.

**Rear parking assists system**

The parking assistance system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by alarming if any object is sensed behind the vehicle.

This system can automatically be turned on whenever the ignition switch is ON and the automatic transaxle's gear lever is in "R".

This system is deactivated when the vehicle's speed is greater than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph).

If the alarm sound happens when shifting the gear to "R" position, this indicates normal condition.

**Warning sound**

You can figure out the distance between your vehicle and obstacles with the warning sound.
9-28 Driving and Operating

Front warning type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning zone</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warning range</td>
<td>100~81 cm</td>
<td>80~41 cm</td>
<td>40 cm~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning sound</td>
<td>beep—beep—beep</td>
<td>beep-beep-beep</td>
<td>continuous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rear warning type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning zone</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warning range</td>
<td>120~81 cm</td>
<td>80~41 cm</td>
<td>40 cm~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning sound</td>
<td>gong—gong—gong</td>
<td>gong-gong-gong</td>
<td>continuous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The parking assistance system warning light can come on to indicate that the sensors are dirty. If the warning light is on due to the sensors being dirty, clean the sensors with a soft sponge and clean water.

If the warning light is still on after cleaning the sensors, consult your dealer to repair the problem as soon as possible.

Caution

If the following happens, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the parking assistance system. Consult a repairer as soon as possible.

- The alarm sounds for 6 times repeatedly when there are no obstacles around the rear bumper.

Caution (Continued)

- The parking assistance system warning lamp comes on while driving.

(Continued)
### Caution

Parking assistance system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the view.

The audible warning signal can be different depending on the objects.

The audible warning signal might not activate in case the sensor is frozen or stained with dirt or mud.

There is a chance of malfunction of the parking assistance system when driving on uneven surfaces such as woods, gravel road, jagged road, or gradient.

Do not push, or scratch the surface of the sensor. This will likely damage the covering.

(Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

The parking assistance system might not recognise sharp objects, thick winter clothes or sponges which absorb the frequency.

When receiving other ultrasonic signals (metal sound or air braking noises from heavy commercial vehicles), the parking assistance system may not work properly.

Clean dirty sensors with a soft sponge and clean water.

You should continue to utilise the mirrors or turning your head. Normal precautions when reversing should be maintained.

Do not press or shock the sensors by hitting or directing a high pressure water gun directly at them while washing, or the sensors will be damaged.

(Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

In the car park, the upper portion of the vehicle can be hit before the sensor operation, so check with outside rearview mirrors or by turning your head during parking.

---

**Rear Vision Camera (RVC)**

The RVC system is designed to help the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. When the key is in the ON/START position and the driver shifts the vehicle into R (Reverse), the video image automatically appears on the LCD Module Display.

Once the driver shifts out of R (Reverse), the video image automatically disappears from the LCD Module Display.
### Warning

The Rear Vision Camera (RVC) system does not replace driver vision.

RVC does not:

- Detect objects that are outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.
- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or pets.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the RVC screen, or use the screen during longer, higher speed backing manoeuvres or where there could be cross-traffic. You're judged distances using the screen will differ from actual distances.

If you do not use proper care before reversing, you could hit a vehicle, child, pedestrian, (Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

bicyclist, or pet, resulting in vehicle damage, injury, or death. Even though the vehicle has the RVC system, always check carefully before reversing by checking behind and around the vehicle.

### Turning the rear vision

Camera System Off or On When the key is in the ON/START position and the driver shifts the vehicle into R (Reverse), the video image will appear when the CAM button is pressed on the infotainment system.

### Rear vision camera location

The camera is located in the rear of the vehicle.

The area displayed by the camera is limited and does not display objects that are close to either corner or under the bumper. The area displayed can vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.
When the system does not seem to work properly

The RVC system might not work properly or display a clear image if:

- The RVC is turned off.
- It is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlamps is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else builds up on the camera lens.
- The back of the vehicle is in an accident. The position and mounting angle of the camera can change or the camera can be affected. Be sure to have the camera and its position and mounting angle checked at your dealer.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Fuel

Fuel Additives

Petrol should contain detergent additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming. Clean fuel injectors and intake valves will allow the emission control system to work properly. Some petrol does not contain sufficient quantities of additive to keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. To make up for this lack of detergent, it is recommended that GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS (ACDelco part No. 88861013) be added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change or every 15,000 km, whichever occurs first.

Petrols containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, may be available in your area. However, fuels containing more than 15% ethanol, such as E85 (85% ethanol), or more than 15% MTBE (an ether) should not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

Notice: This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.

Some petrols can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy petrol whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such petrols. Fuels containing MMT can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer for service.
9-32 Driving and Operating

Fuel for Petrol Engines

Fuel recommendations
Use only unleaded fuel rated at RON95.
Fuel quality and additives contained in fuel have a significant effect on power output, drive ability, and life of the engine.
Fuel with too low an octane number can cause engine knock.

Note: To prevent accidental use of leaded fuel, the nozzles for leaded fuel are larger, and will not fit the fuel filler neck of your vehicle.
Do not use methanol.
Fuels containing methanol should not be used in your vehicle.
This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

Caution
Use of fuel with an octane number lower than RON95 may damage engine. (In some countries, you may be able to use unleaded fuel rated at RON91. For the details, consult an authorised repairer.)
Use of leaded fuel will damage exhaust system and invalidate the warranty.

Caution
Use of methanol may damage the fuel system. Such misuse is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
Operation in foreign countries If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country:
Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
Confirm that suitable fuel is available.

Fuel for Diesel Engines

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel meeting the specifications of DIN EN 590. Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils or entirely or partially plant-based diesel fuels, such as rape seed oil or bio-diesel, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions.
The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent.
Diesel fuels with improved low-temperature properties are therefore available on the market during the winter months. Make sure that you fill the tank with winter fuel before the start of the cold weather season.
Filling the Tank

⚠️ Caution

If you use inappropriate grade fuel or put incorrect fuel additives into the fuel tank, the engine and catalytic converter may seriously be damaged.

Be sure to use the correct fuel (petrol or diesel) corresponding to your vehicle when refuelling. If you fill petrol in your diesel powered vehicle, your vehicle can be seriously damaged. If you vehicle has diesel engine, you can confirm the correct fuel by taking a look at information on the fuel filler cap.

For safety reasons, fuel containers, pumps and hoses must be properly earthed. Static electricity build up can ignite the petrol vapour. You can be burnt and your vehicle damaged.

⚠️ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off engine and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Switch off any mobile phone. Vapourised fuel can be ignited by electromagnetic waves or electric current of mobile phone.

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks. Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

Remove static electricity on your hands by touching something able to release the static electricity before touching or opening fuel cap or refuelling nozzle.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

Do not perform any actions that may generate static electricity like getting on and off the vehicle when refuelling. Vapourised fuel can be ignited by static electricity. If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a repairer.
9-34 Driving and Operating

The fuel filler door is in the left rear side of vehicle.

1. Stop the engine.

2. Unlock the doors by pressing the door lock switch on the driver's door trim pad.

3. Open the fuel filler door.

4. Turn the fuel filler cap anticlockwise slowly. If a hissing sound is heard, wait for it to stop before completely unscrewing the cap.

5. Remove the cap. The cap is tethered to the hinge hook.

6. After refuelling, close cap. Turn it clockwise until you hear "click" sound.

7. Push the fuel filler door closed until it latches.

Note: If, in cold weather, the fuel filler door does not open, tap the door lightly. Then try to open it again.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

Fuel Consumption – CO2-Emissions

Petrol and Diesel engines

The fuel consumption (combined) of the model Trax is within a range of 5.3 to 14.3 l/100 km.

The CO2 emission (combined) is within a range of 164 to 244 g/km.

For the values specific for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
Vehicle Care

General Information
Accessories and Modifications .............. 10-2
Vehicle Storage ..................... 10-2
End-of-Life Vehicle Recovery .............. 10-3

Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work .............. 10-3
Bonnet .................. 10-3
Engine Compartment Overview .............. 10-5
Engine Oil .................. 10-11
Automatic Transmission Fluid .............. 10-16
Manual Gearbox Fluid .................. 10-16
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter .............. 10-16
Engine Coolant .................. 10-17
Engine Overheating .................. 10-18
Power Steering Fluid .................. 10-19
Washer Fluid .................. 10-20
Brake Fluid .................. 10-21

Battery .................. 10-22
Diesel Fuel Filter .................. 10-24
Wiper Blade Replacement .............. 10-24

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement .................. 10-25
Headlamps and Parking Lamps .............. 10-26
Front Indicator Lamps .................. 10-27
Tail lamps, Indicator, Brake lamps, and Reversing Lamps .............. 10-27
Side Indicator Lamps .................. 10-28
Centre High-Mounted Brake lamp (CHMBL) .............. 10-28
Rear Fog Lamps .................. 10-28
Number Plate Lamp .................. 10-28
Interior Lamps .................. 10-28

Electrical System
Fuses .................. 10-29

Vehicle Tools
Tools .................. 10-36

Wheels and Tyres
Wheels and Tyres .................. 10-38
Winter Tyres .................. 10-38
Tyre Designations .................. 10-38
Tyre Pressure .................. 10-38
Tyre Pressure Monitor System .............. 10-39
Tread Depth .................. 10-39
Tyre Rotation .................. 10-40
Different Size Tyres and Wheels .............. 10-40
Wheel Covers .................. 10-41
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance .............. 10-41
Tyre Chains .................. 10-42
Tyre Repair Kit .................. 10-42
Tyre Changing .................. 10-50

Jump Starting
Jump Starting .................. 10-54

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle .................. 10-57

Appearance Care
Exterior Care .................. 10-60
Interior Care .................. 10-62
10-2 Vehicle Care

General Information

Accessories and Modifications

We recommend to use genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Do not make any modifications to the electrical system, e.g. changes of electronic control units (chip tuning).

⚠️ Caution

Never modify your vehicle. It may affect the performance, durability and safety of the vehicle and the warrant may not cover any problems caused by the modification.

Vehicle Storage

Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve rubber seals.
- Change engine oil.
- Drain washer fluid reservoir.
- Check coolant anti-freeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. For manual gearbox, engage first or reverse gear. For automatic transmission, engine P position. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.
- Close the bonnet.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.
End-of-Life Vehicle Recovery

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

![Warning]

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

Bonnets

Opening

1. Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.

![Warning]

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.
10-4 Vehicle Care

2. Reach under front edge of the bonnet and push bonnet release lever upward.

3. Lift the bonnet gently. Two air-pressurised support rods will hold the bonnet open.

**Caution**
When the engine is hot, only touch the foam padding of the bonnet support rod handle.

**Closing**

**To close the bonnet:**
1. Make sure hands and other body parts, as well as those of other persons, are completely away from the engine compartment and bonnet-to-body edges.
2. Lower the bonnet, allowing it to drop from a height of about 30cm (1 foot).
3. Make sure the bonnet is locked firmly in place.

**Warning**
Pull on the front edge of the bonnet to make sure it is latched securely before you drive your vehicle.
Do not pull the bonnet release handle while your vehicle is moving.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**
Do not move your vehicle with the bonnet open. An open bonnet will obscure the driver's vision.
Operating your vehicle with the bonnet open can lead to a collision resulting in damage to your vehicle, to other property, personal injury or even death.
Engine Compartment Overview

2.4 DOHC - LHD
10-6 Vehicle Care

2.4 DOHC - RHD
10-8  Vehicle Care

3.0 DOHC - RHD
10-10 Vehicle Care
1. Engine air filter
2. Power steering fluid container
3. Engine oil cap
4. Brake fluid container
5. Engine coolant container
6. Clutch fluid reservoir
7. Fuse block
8. Battery
9. Washer fluid container
10. Dipstick for engine oil level
11. Auxiliary fuse block

**Engine Oil**

Keep your engine properly lubricated by keeping the engine oil at the correct level.

It is normal for an engine to consume some engine oil.

Check the oil level at regular intervals such as every time you stop for fuel.

In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

### Checking engine oil level

1. Park vehicle on level ground.
2. Turn off the engine and give the oil 5 minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
3. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it clean.
4. Re-insert dipstick completely.

5. Pull the dipstick out again.

6. Check oil level, as shown on the dipstick. Oil should be between MIN and MAX.

If oil level is not clear, read the opposite side of gauge instead.

Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.
7. If the oil level is below MIN, add enough oil of the same grade as is currently in the engine to raise the oil level to MAX. Do not fill over MAX mark.

**Warning**
Engine oil is an irritant and, if ingested, can cause illness or death. Keep out of reach of children. (Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**
- Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.
- Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

**Warning**
Adding too much oil can affect engine operation. Do not allow oil to go above MAX mark on dipstick. Overfilling reservoir can damage your vehicle by:
- Increasing oil consumption.
- Fouling spark plugs.
- Building excessive carbon deposits in the engine.

**Warning**
Before attempting to do the work, be sure you are fully acquainted with doing this job. Have a repairer do this work if you are not confident of completing the task safely. We recommend an authorised repairer. Otherwise, you could be injured or damage the vehicle.

Engine oil loses its ability to lubricate when contaminated. Be sure to change your engine oil according to maintenance schedule. Be sure to replace the engine oil filter each time you change engine oil. Under severe conditions, change oil and oil filter more frequently than is recommended in the standard maintenance schedule.

### Changing engine oil and filter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Warning</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Before attempting to do the work, be sure you are fully acquainted with doing this job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have a repairer do this work if you are not confident of completing the task safely. We recommend an authorised repairer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise, you could be injured or damage the vehicle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Warning</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil loses its ability to lubricate when contaminated. Be sure to change your engine oil according to maintenance schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be sure to replace the engine oil filter each time you change engine oil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under severe conditions, change oil and oil filter more frequently than is recommended in the standard maintenance schedule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Severe conditions include, but are not limited to:

- Frequent cold starts.
- Considerable travel in stop-and-go traffic.
- Frequent short trips.
- Frequent driving when outside temperature remains below freezing.
- Prolonged idling.
- Frequent low-speed driving.
- Driving in dusty areas.

**Warning (Continued)**

Keep this and other toxic materials out of the reach of children.

Engine oil can irritate the skin and can cause illness and even death if swallowed.

**Caution**

Use of unauthorised or low quality engine oil or chemical engine treatments (additives) can damage the engine.

Consult a repairer before attempting to use additives. We recommend that you consult an authorised repairer.

**Caution**

Do not dispose of used engine oil and filter with your household waste.

See your local, authorised waste management facility.

Used engine oil and filter contain harmful elements that may be unhealthy to you and threat to the environment.

**Selecting the right engine oil**

Use and ask for engine oils with the dexos certification mark. Oils meeting the requirements of the vehicle should have the dexos certification mark on the container.

This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos specification.
10-14 Vehicle Care

This vehicle was filled at the factory with dexos-approved engine oil.

Caution (Continued)

Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos specification or an equivalent engine oil of the appropriate viscosity grade. Engine oils approved to the dexos specification will show the dexos symbol on the container. Failure (Continued)

to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are unsure whether the oil is approved to the dexos specification, ask your service provider.

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. SAE 0W-30, 0W-40, or 5W-40 can also be used. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -29°C (-20°F), an SAE 0W-30 oil should be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, be sure to always select oil that meets the required specification.

Engine oil life system

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions, engine temperature and mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A change engine oil lamp displays. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1,000 km (600 miles). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be
changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5,000 km (3,000 miles) since the last oil change.

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See an authorised repairer for service.

**How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System**

The engine oil life system calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required.

To reset the engine oil life system, do one of the following:

- Using the scan tool.
  
  Your authorised repairer will reset the system using scan tool after changing the engine oil. Consult a repairer.

- Using accelerator pedal

**Petrol engine**

1. Turn the ignition key to ON/START with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.
3. Turn the key to LOCK.

If the change engine oil lamp comes back on and stays on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

**Diesel engine**

1. Remove key from ignition switch for more than one minute. Then turn on ignition key (do not start engine).
2. Perform the following procedure:
   2.1. Press the accelerator pedal to the floor and hold it on the floor for 2 seconds.
   2.2. Release the accelerator pedal and take your foot off of the pedal for 2 seconds.
   2.3. Repeat this sequence (1, 2) two more times (for a total of three times) within one minute.

If the change engine oil lamp comes back on and stays on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.
10-16 Vehicle Care

Caution

Remember to reset the engine oil life system whenever the engine oil is changed.

Recommended engine oil and maintenance schedule

Recommended engine oil
See Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8.

Maintenance schedule

Automatic Transmission Fluid
It is not necessary to check the automatic transmission fluid level.
If you have a problem e.g. leak, have it remedied by a repairer.

Note: Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle. Always use the fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants.

See Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8.

Manual Gearbox Fluid
It is not necessary to check the manual gearbox fluid level. If you have a problem e.g. leak, have it remedied by a repairer.

Note: Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle. Always use the fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

1. Shake the air cleaner element to remove surface dust.
2. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing.
3. Cover the open filter housing with a damp cloth while cleaning the element.
4. Clean air filter element by blowing compressed air through it in the direction opposite normal airflow.
**Caution**

The engine needs clean air to operate properly.

Do not operate your vehicle without the air cleaner element installed.

Driving without the air cleaner element properly installed can damage your engine.

---

**Engine Coolant**

In countries with moderate climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -30°C.

In countries with extremely cold climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -40°C.

Maintain a sufficient concentration of anti-freeze.

---

**Caution**

Only use approved anti-freeze.

---

**Coolant level**

---

**Warning**

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot. It could cause serious injury. The engine must be cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

Fill up with a mixture of demineralised water and anti-freeze approved for the vehicle. Install the cap tightly. Have the anti-freeze concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a repairer.

**Note:** If the coolant level falls below the MIN mark, refill the radiator with 56:44 mix of de-mineralised water and correct antifreeze.

In order to protect your vehicle in extremely cold weather, use mix of 48 percent water and 52 percent antifreeze.

---

When the engine is cool, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX mark on the coolant reservoir. The level of coolant rises as the engine warms and drops back as the engine cools.
10-18 Vehicle Care

⚠️ Caution

Plain water or the wrong mixture can damage the cooling system.
Do not use plain water, alcohol or methanol anti-freeze in coolant system.
The engine may overheat or even catch fire.

⚠️ Caution (Continued)

Coolant can irritate the skin and can cause illness or death if swallowed.

⚠️ Caution

Coolant can be hazardous material.
Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.
Clean your skin and nails with soap and water after coming in contact with coolant.
Keep out of reach of children.

(Continued)

⚠️ Caution (Continued)

Engine Overheating

If the engine coolant temperature gauge pointer is in the red area, or if you have any other reason to suspect the engine may be overheating:
1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn off the air conditioning.
3. Let the engine idle for a few minutes.
4. Be sure the cooling fan is operating.

⚠️ Warning

If steam is visible, move away from vehicle until engine is cool. Steam can cause serious burns.

Note: Using A/C while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic can cause the engine overheating.

If the fan is not operating and steam is visible, perform the following:
1. Turn off engine.
2. Move away from vehicle without opening the bonnet.
3. Allow engine to cool.
4. When steam is no longer visible, carefully open bonnet.
5. Consult a repairer as soon as possible.

If the fan is operating and steam is not visible, perform the following:
1. Carefully open the bonnet.
2. Idle engine until cool.
3. Check coolant level.

If the fan is operating, but engine temperature does not fall, perform the following:
1. Stop the engine.
2. Carefully open the bonnet.
3. Allow the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is low, check for leaks for following components:
1. Radiator.
2. Radiator hoses.
3. Radiator connections.
5. Heater hose connections.
6. Water pump.

If you find a leak or other damage, or if the coolant is still leaking, consult a repairer immediately.

**Warning**
Scalding hot coolant steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury.
Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when engine and radiator are hot.

---

**Power Steering Fluid**

1. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and pull it straight up.
4. Wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
5. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
10-20 Vehicle Care

6. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

**Diesel & 3.0 Petrol**
When the engine is hot, the level should be at the hot MAX level.
When the engine is cold, the fluid level should be between MIN and MAX on the dipstick.

**2.4 Petrol**
When the engine is hot, the level should be in HOT range.
When the engine is cold, the fluid level should be in COLD range on the dipstick.

**Caution**
Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly.

(Continued)

---

**Caution (Continued)**
Do not allow contaminates to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap or from entering the reservoir.

**Warning (Continued)**
An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.

---

**Washer Fluid**

- **Caution**
  Do not operate vehicle without the required amount of power steering fluid.
  To do so can damage power steering system of your vehicle, leading to costly repairs.

- **Warning**
  An overflow of the fluid may cause the fluid to burn or discolour paintwork.
  Do not overfill the reservoir.

(Continued)

Fill with windscreen washer fluid that contains anti-freeze.
To refill windscreen washer fluid reservoir:

- Use only commercially available ready-to-use washer fluid for that purpose.
- Do not use tap water. Minerals present in tap water may plug the windscreen washer lines.
- If air temperature is likely to go below freezing, use windscreen washer fluid which has sufficient anti-freezing property.

**Brake Fluid**

**Brake and clutch fluid**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brake/clutch fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**<Brake fluid>**

The brake/clutch fluid level must be between the MIN and the MAX marks.

When filling up, ensure maximum cleanliness as contamination of the brake fluid can lead to brake system malfunctions. Have the cause of the loss of brake fluid remedied by a repairer.

Only use brake fluid approved for the vehicle.

**<Clutch fluid>**
10-22 Vehicle Care

See "Brake Fluid" under Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8.

⚠️ Caution

Make sure you thoroughly clean around the brake/clutch fluid reservoir cap before removing the cap.

Contamination of the brake/clutch fluid system can affect system performance, leading to costly repairs.

⚠️ Caution

An overflow of brake/clutch fluid on the engine may cause the fluid to burn.
Do not overfill the reservoir.
An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.

⚠️ Caution

Brake fluid is harsh and can irritate skin and eyes.
Do not allow the brake/clutch fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If it does, immediately wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water, or hand cleaner.

Battery

Battery

Vehicles without stop-start system will be equipped with a lead acid battery. Vehicles with stop-start system will be equipped with an AGM battery which has higher performance than lead acid battery.

Replacing the battery

⚠️ Note: Any deviation from the instructions given in this paragraph may lead to a temporary deactivation of the stop start system. Only use batteries that
allow the fuse box to be mounted above the battery. In vehicles with stop-start system, ensure to have the AGM (Absorbent Glass Mat) battery replaced with an AGM battery again. An AGM battery can be identified by the label on the battery. We recommend the use of an original GM battery.

**Note:** Using an AGM battery different from the original GM battery might result in a lower performance of the stop start system. We recommend that you have the battery replaced by your authorised repairer.

The vehicle battery is maintenance free.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than 4 weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

See *Battery Power Protection on page 6-9.*

Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the battery out of reach of children.

- The battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner’s Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the battery.

---

**Warning**

Keep smoking materials away from a battery to avoid flames or sparks when the battery is checked because the explosive gas could be occurred.

If the battery explodes, it can be result in damages of your vehicle and serious injury or death.

Avoid skin contact with battery acid because it can damage by contained highly corrosive and toxic sulphuric acid.

(Continued)
10-24 Vehicle Care

**Warning (Continued)**

If you accidentally get it on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because it contains sulphuric acid and gas.

Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint.

Do not open and tilt the battery.

**Diesel Fuel Filter**

**Diesel Particle Filter**

The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving. The filter is cleaned by burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take more than 15 minutes. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If the filter requires cleaning or previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, DPF indicator illuminates or flashes. The indicator will go off the self-cleaning operation is complete.

Stopping the journey or switching off the engine during cleaning is not recommended.

**Warning (Continued)**

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not place your vehicle over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.

Turn the ignition OFF as soon as your vehicle enters a garage.

Do not go near the hot exhaust parts including exhaust tail pipe.

**Wiper Blade Replacement**

Properly functioning windscreen wipers are essential for clear vision and safe driving. Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades.

Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windscreen.

Foreign material on the windscreen or wiper blades can reduce the effectiveness of the wipers. If the blades are not wiping properly,
clean both the windscreen and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent. Rinse them thoroughly with water.

Repeat the process, if necessary. There is no way to remove traces of silicone from glass. Therefore never apply silicone polish or wax polish to your vehicle’s windscreen or you will get streak, blade chatter or blade noise that impairs the driver's vision.

Do not use solvents, petrol, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean wipers. These are harsh and can damage the blades and painted surfaces.

Replacing wiper blades

1. Press and hold the wiper blade retaining clip.
2. Pull the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
3. Install a new wiper blade onto the arm.

Bulb Replacement

Switch off the ignition and switch off the relevant switch or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base! Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

Replace headlamp bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Note: After driving in heavy rain or washing, some exterior lamp lenses could appear frosted.

This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside.

This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle.

If the water leaks into the light bulb circuitry, have the vehicle checked, we recommend an authorised repairer.
10-26 Vehicle Care

Headlamps and Parking Lamps

Dipped beam and main beam

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the fastener plugs that hold the radiator upper cover.
3. Remove the radiator upper cover.
4. Remove three bolts and headlamp assembly.
5. Remove the headlamp cap.

6. Release the spring that retains the bulb.
7. Remove the bulb.
8. Install the proper replacement headlamp bulb.
9. Reinstall the bulb retaining spring.
10. Replace the headlamp cap.
11. Connect the wiring harness connector.

Parking lamps

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly.
3. Remove the headlamp cap.
4. Pull out the bulb holder located next to the headlamp high bulb.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of the bulb holder.
6. Install a new bulb.
7. Replace the headlamp cap in reverse order.

Fog lamps

Have bulbs replaced by a repairer.
Front Indicator Lamps

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly.
3. Disconnect the wiring harness connector from the bulb holder.
4. Rotate the front indicator bulb holder anti-clockwise.
5. Pull the front indicator bulb holder out of the lamp housing.
6. Press the bulb inward and rotate it anti-clockwise to remove it from the bulb holder.
7. Install a new bulb into the holder by pressing it in and rotating it clockwise.
8. Install the holder into the lamp housing by rotating it clockwise.
9. Reinstall the headlamp assembly.

Tail lamps, Indicator, Brake lamps, and Reversing Lamps

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the both covers.
3. Remove two screws and the lamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb holder by rotating it anti-clockwise.
5. Remove the bulb from the holder by pressing the bulb and rotating it anti-clockwise.
6. Insert a correct replacement bulb into the bulb holder.
7. Replace the bulb holder into the lamp housing. Twist the bulb holder clockwise to secure.
8. Replace the lamp housing into the vehicle using the two screws removed earlier.
9. Close the tailgate.

Tail lamps and brake lamps (LED)

Have them inspected and replaced by a repairer.
## 10-28 Vehicle Care

### Side Indicator Lamps
If the side indicator lamp in the outside rearview mirror is not operating, have it checked by repairer.

### Centre High-Mounted Brake lamp (CHMBL)
If the CHMSL is not operating, have it checked by repairer.

### Rear Fog Lamps
Have LED lamp replaced by a repairer.

### Number Plate Lamp

1. Remove two screws and the lamp cover.
2. To remove the bulb holder from the lamp housing, rotate the bulb holder anti-clockwise.
3. Pull the bulb out from the bulb holder.
4. Replace the bulb.
5. Install the bulb holder into the lamp housing by rotating the bulb holder clockwise.
6. Replace the lamp covers.

### Interior Lamps

#### Courtesy lamps
1. To remove, prise the opposite side of the lamp switch using a flat-blade screwdriver. (Be careful not to make scratches.)
2. Remove the bulb.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Reinstall the lamp assembly.
**Electrical System**

**Fuses**

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse.

In a box above the positive terminal of the battery are some main fuses. If necessary have them changed by a repairer.

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

Some functions are protected by several fuses.

Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.

*Note:* Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle.

When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.

**Fuse extractor**

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.

Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

**Fuse block**

1. Interior fuse block is located in the left side of the front passenger foot well.

2. Engine room fuse block is next to the coolant reservoir.
3. Auxiliary engine room fuse block (Diesel only) is located in the centre of the front panel.

*Note:* Not all fuse block descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.
Vehicle Care 10-31

Interior fuse block
Notice: USE THE DESIGNED FUSE ONLY

*: optional equipment
Vehicle Care 10-33

Engine compartment fuse block
Notice: USE THE DESIGNED FUSE ONLY

*: optional equipment
Auxiliary engine compartment fuse block (Diesel only)
Notice: USE THE DESIGNED FUSE ONLY

Vehicle Tools

Tools

Your spare tyre, jack and tools are secured in the luggage compartment and below the rear bumper.

In some models, jack handle type is applied to the vehicle.

The actual tools in the vehicle may differ from the description.

⚠️ Warning

Always store jack, spare tyre, other tools and equipment securely in their correct location.

Do not store jack, spare tyre, or other equipment in passenger compartment.

In the event of a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment can be thrown around inside your vehicle and cause personal injuries.
Removing the jack and tools

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull up the floor cover and locate the wing-bolt.
3. Remove the wing-bolt from the jack by rotating it anti-clockwise.
4. Remove the jack and tool bag.
5. Remove the straps holding the bag containing the tool. Then remove the wheel wrench and jack handle from the bag.

Removing the spare tyre

1. Use a flat-blade screwdriver to pry off the whole cover above the rear bumper.
2. Use the supplied wheel wrench to loosen a bolt to fix a spare tyre.
3. Unhook the cable on the tyre carrier which is located below the rear bumper.
4. Remove the spare tyre from the tyre carrier.

Note: To eliminate the possibility of the jack and tools rattling while the car is moving, stow them securely under the floor covering.

Jack specification
Maximum working load : 900 kg

Warning

We designed the jack for use on your vehicle only.
Do not use jack provided with your vehicle on other vehicles.
Never exceed the jack's maximum permissible load.
Use of this jack on other vehicles may damage the other vehicles or your jack and lead to personal injury.
10-38 Vehicle Care

Wheels and Tyres

Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a repairer in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Winter Tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7°C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

Tyre Designations

E.g. 215/60 R 16 95 H

215: Tyre width, mm

60: Cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %

R: Belt type: Radial
RF: Type: RunFlat
16: Wheel diameter, inches
95: Load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg
H: Speed code letter

Speed code letter:
Q: up to 160 km/h (100 mph)
S: up to 180 km/h (112 mph)
T: up to 190 km/h (118 mph)
H: up to 210 km/h (130 mph)
V: up to 240 km/h (150 mph)
W: up to 270 km/h (168 mph)

Tyre Pressure

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel.

Unscrew the valve cap.

Tyre pressures label is on the driver's door frame.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.
**Vehicle Care** 10-39

**Note:** Check inflation pressure when tyres are cold. Warm tyres produce inaccurate readings. Tyres can become warm after you have driven more than one mile (1.6km) and stay warm for up to three hours after vehicle has been sitting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning (Continued)**

- If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

**Tyre Pressure Monitor System**

The tyre pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four wheels once per minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

All wheels must be equipped with pressure sensors and the tyres must have the prescribed pressure. If wheels without sensors are mounted, the tyre pressure monitoring system is not operational. Retrofitting of sensors is possible.

**Tread Depth**

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

Tyres should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tyres).

The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels is the same as before.
10-40 Vehicle Care

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

Tyre Rotation

Tyres are rotated to achieve a more uniform wear for all tyres. The first rotation is the most important.

Any time unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tyres as soon as possible and check the wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tyres or wheels.

When rotating the tyres, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here. Do not include the spare tyre in the tyre rotation. Adjust the front and rear tyres to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tyre and Loading Information label after the tyres have been rotated.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor System.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened.

⚠️ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the centre of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tyre rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

Different Size Tyres and Wheels

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogram the speedometer as well as the nominal tyre pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tyre size, have the label with tyre pressures replaced.
Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

Warning

Do not use different size and type of tyres and wheels than those originally installed on the vehicle. It can affect safety and performance of the vehicle. It could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing tyres, be sure to install all four tyres and wheels of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. The use of any other tyre size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, stopping distance, body clearance and speedometer reliability.

Wheel Covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used. If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.

Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

The tyres and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tyre life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tyre balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Also, your vehicle’s suspension and steering systems need some time to settle from the shipping process, and adjust to the way you drive and the amount of passengers and cargo you carry with you. GM recommends that you drive your new vehicle at least 800 kilometres before evaluating your vehicle for steering pull. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal. So, consider requesting an alignment check only if the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other, or if you notice unusual tyre wear. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tyres and wheels may need to be re-balanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.
Tyre Chains

Before fitting chains, remove wheel covers to avoid scratching them.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use tyre chains on the front tyre of 16 inch size. Do not use chains on the other tyre size.
- Re-tighten the chains after driving about 0.5 mile (about 1.0km)

Caution

Use of snow chains could adversely affect vehicle handling.
Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer’s recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
Avoid sharp turns, bumps and holes.
Avoid locked-wheel braking.

Note: SAE class S-type chains are the proper type for your vehicle.
Always drive slowly when you are using tyre chains.
If you hear the chains contacting the vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains.
If the contact continues, slow down until it stops.

Tyre Repair Kit

Storing the tyre sealant and compressor kit

To access the tyre sealant and compressor kit:

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Lift the cover.
3. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit.

To store the tyre sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may
Warning (Continued)

enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation.

Warning

Overinflating a tyre could cause the tyre to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tyre to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

Warning

Storing the tyre sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tyre sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

If this vehicle has a tyre sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tyre, tyre changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tyre.

The tyre sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (1/4 in) in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an under inflated tyre.

If the tyre has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tyre is too severely damaged for the tyre sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

Read and follow all of the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:

1. Pressure Gauge
2. Pressure Deflation Button (White)
3. Selector Switch
10-44 Vehicle Care

4. On/Off Button (Orange)
5. Tyre Sealant Canister
6. Air Only Hose (Black Hose/White Tip)
7. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear Hose/Orange Tip)
8. Power Plug

Tyre sealant
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

Check the tyre sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date.
Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer.
There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced.

Using the tyre sealant and compressor kit to temporarily seal and inflate a punctured tyre
When using the tyre sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes.
This will help to inflate the tyre faster.
If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.

1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (7) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.
   Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anti-clockwise.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose (7) onto the tyre valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.

6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter. If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter. Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.

8. Turn the selector switch (3) anti-clockwise to the Sealant + Air position.

9. Press the on/off (4) button to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tyre.

   The pressure gauge (1) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tyre, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air only.

10. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (1). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label.

   The pressure gauge (1) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

   **Caution**

   If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug (Continued)
10-46 Vehicle Care

Caution (Continued)
from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

11. Press the on/off button (4) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

   The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tyre, therefore, Steps 12 to 18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

   Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.

13. Turn the sealant/air hose (7) anti-clockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.

14. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.

15. Replace the sealant/air hose (7), and the power plug (8) back in their original location.

16. If the flat tyre was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister (5) and place it in a highly visible location.

   Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tyre is repaired or replaced.

17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.

18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 miles) to distribute the sealant in the tyre.

19. Stop at a safe location and check the tyre pressure. Refer to Steps 1 through 11 under "Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured)."

   If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant cannot seal the tyre.

   If the tyre pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure.

20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre or vehicle.

21. Dispose of the used sealant canister (5) and sealant/air hose (7) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local regulations and practices.
22. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.

23. After temporarily sealing a tyre using the tyre sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorised dealer within a 161 km (100 miles) of driving to have the tyre repaired or replaced.

**Using the tyre sealant and compressor kit without sealant**

**Inflate a tyre (not punctured)**

To use the air compressor to inflate a tyre with air only and not sealant:

1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location.
2. Unwrap the air only hose (6) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground. Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tyre valve stem cap by turning it anti-clockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (6) onto the tyre valve stem and turn it clockwise until tight.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers.

1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location.
10-48 Vehicle Care

6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets.
   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.
   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.
   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.

8. Turn the selector switch (3) clockwise to the Air Only position.

9. Press the on/off (4) button to turn the compressor on.
   The compressor will inflate the tyre with air only.

10. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (1). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label.
   The pressure gauge (1) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.
   If you inflate the tyre higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (4) until the proper pressure reading is reached.
   This option is only functional when using the air only hose (6).
11. Press the on/off button (4) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.

13. Disconnect the air only hose (6) from the tyre valve stem, by turning it anti-clockwise, and replace the tyre valve stem cap.

14. Replace the air only hose (6) and the power plug (8) back in its original location.

15. Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.

Removal and installation of the sealant canister

To remove the sealant canister:

1. Unwrap both hoses.
2. Slide the canister away from the compressor housing.
3. Unscrew the hose connected to the canister.
4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
5. Attach the hose to the canister and tighten.

The tyre sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.
6. Slide the new canister into place. Make sure it sits in the compressor housing socket.

7. Replace both hoses to their original location.

**Tyre Changing**

Mixing tyres could cause you to lose control while driving.

If you mix tyres of different sizes, brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tyres), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tyres of different sizes, brands, or types may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the correct size, brand, and type of tyres on all wheels.

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel.

See *Tyre Repair Kit on page 10-42.*

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Pull your vehicle over to a safe place away from traffic.
- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake.
  - For manual gearbox, engage first gear or reverse gear.
  - For automatic transmission, engage P position.
- Turn off the engine and remove key.
- Turn on the hazard lights.
- Use a wedge, block of wood, or rocks in front of and behind the tyre that is diagonal from the tyre you plan to change.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle.
- Remove the spare wheel.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1cm (0.4 inches) thick) should be placed under the jack.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread before mounting the wheel.

**Warning**

We designed the jack for use on your vehicle only.

(Continued)
Warning (Continued)
Do not use jack provided with your vehicle on other vehicles.
Never exceed the jack's maximum permissible load.
Use of this jack on other vehicles may damage the other vehicles or your jack and lead to personal injury.

How to change a flat tyre
1. Remove the jack, wheel wrench, jack handle and spare tyre from the storage in the luggage compartment and below the rear bumper.
2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen the wheel nuts by one turn each.

Caution
Do not remove any of the nuts until you have raised the wheel off the ground.

3. Insert the jack handle and the wheel wrench into the jack.
4. Rotate the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the lift head slightly.
5. Locate the jack according to the figure below. There is a notch at the front and rear of the vehicle under the doors.
6. Place the jack vertically at the front or the rear jacking notch next to the wheel you plan to change.

Caution
Do not attempt to raise vehicle until the jack is in the proper position, and secure both to the vehicle and the ground.
10-52 Vehicle Care

7. Raise vehicle by rotating wheel wrench or jack handle clockwise until lifting head fits firmly into appropriate notch and tyre is off the ground about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Caution

As the jack begins to raise the vehicle, make sure jack is properly placed so it will not slip.

Note: Do not raise vehicle more than is necessary to change wheel.

Warning

Never get under car or start or run the engine while car is supported by a jack.
Vehicle may slip off the jack resulting in serious injury or death.

8. Remove wheel nuts completely by turning anti-clockwise.

Caution

Never use oil or grease on wheel nuts.
Always use correct wheel nuts.

9. Remove tyre and wheel.

10. Mount spare tyre on the wheel hub.

Caution (Continued)

As soon as possible, take your car to a repairer and have the wheel nuts tightened according to specifications.
If tightened incorrectly, the nuts might come loose.

11. Reinstall the wheel nuts.
   Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
12. Rotate wheel wrench or jack handle anti-clockwise and lower vehicle to the ground.

13. Tighten wheel nuts firmly to 92 lb-ft (125 Nm) in a diagonal sequence. 1→2→3→4→5 (See fig. below)

14. Hang the tyre carrier on the support rod and tighten the bolt in the hole above the rear bumper to 4.4 lb-ft (6 Nm) to raise the tyre carrier.

15. Hook the cable and reinstall the hole cover in its original position.

16. Secure the jack and tools in their original position and the flat tyre in the luggage compartment.

Note: The compact spare tyre is for short term use only. Consult a repairer to replace the spare tyre with a regular tyre as soon as possible.

⚠️ Warning
Make sure to use the correct nuts or bolts tightened to the proper torque.
Incorrect wheel nuts or bolts or improperly tightened wheel nuts or bolts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident.

⚠️ Caution
Do not store the flat tyre in the position below the rear bumper where the spare tyre was. The flat tyre can come off the position.

⚠️ Warning
Do not store the jack and tools in the passenger compartment.
In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment can be thrown around the vehicle and cause personal injuries.

⚠️ Caution
When using the jack, the vehicle could become unstable and move, damaging the vehicle and causing personal injury.
• Use jack supplied at correct jacking position.
• When installing the jack for lifting the vehicle, it should be perpendicular to the ground.
• Do not go under a jacked-up vehicle.
• Do not start vehicle while jacked-up.

(Continued)
10-54  **Vehicle Care**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution (Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Before jacking, get all passengers out of the vehicle and clear of vehicle and other traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Use jack only for changing wheels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Do not jack the vehicle on an inclined or slippery surface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Use jacking position nearest to the wheel requiring changing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Block wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Before jacking, ensure parking brake is on and the transaxle is set in 1st or reverse gear (M/T) or P (A/T).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Do not jack the vehicle and change the wheel where traffic is close.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call a garage or motoring service for assistance where conditions are not satisfactory for jacking the car or if you are not confident of completing the task safely.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jump Starting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Caution</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not try to start vehicle by pushing or pulling it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This can damage catalytic converter and automatic transaxle, and may cause personal injury.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can start vehicle that has a discharged battery by transferring electrical power to it from a battery in another vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not expose battery to flames or sparks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
Do not lean over battery while jump starting vehicle.

Do not allow cable terminals to touch each other.

Wear eye protection when working near any battery.

Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabric, or painted surfaces.

Make sure battery providing jump start has the same voltage as the battery receiving the jump.

Do not disconnect discharged battery from vehicle.

Failure to follow these precautions or the following instructions for starting an engine with jump leads can cause battery to explode, resulting in burns from battery acid, or electrical short circuit. This can create damage to electrical systems in both vehicles, and cause serious personal injury.

Turn audio system off before jump starting your vehicle. Otherwise you may damage audio system.

Caution

Always route jump leads so they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment. Otherwise you may damage vehicle and cause serious injury.

Warning (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Before jump starting

1. Apply parking brake.

2. For a vehicle with automatic transaxle, shift to PARK, and for manual transaxle, shift to NEUTRAL.

3. Switch off all electrical accessories.

Attaching jump leads

To jump start your vehicle, connect the jump leads in the following order:
10-56  Vehicle Care

1. Connect one end of the first jump lead to the positive terminal of the battery providing the jump start (identified by "+" sign on the battery case or terminal).

2. Connect the other end of this same jump lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery ("+" sign).

3. Connect the first end of the other jump lead to the negative terminal of the battery providing the jump start (identified by "-" sign on the battery case or terminal).

   **Warning**
   Last connection to the vehicle to be charged should NOT be made to the negative (-) battery terminal.

   (Continued)

   **Warning (Continued)**
   Attach the clamp for this last connection to a steel bracket bolted to the engine block.
   This last connection should be as far away from the battery as possible.
   Connecting the jump lead to the negative terminal of the discharged battery could result in arcing and possibly a battery explosion.
   Serious personal injury or vehicle damage can result.

4. Connect the other end of the second jump lead to ground on the other vehicle, such as a steel bracket bolted to the engine block.

5. The engine of the vehicle providing the jump start can be allowed to run during the jump start.

Once the previously discharged vehicle is running:

1. Carefully disconnect the ground connection (-). Begin with the vehicle with the discharged battery. Leave the discharged vehicle running.

2. Disconnect the negative lead from vehicle providing the jump.

3. Disconnect the "+" lead from both batteries. Store the jump leads with the spare tyre.

4. Operate the discharged vehicle for approximately 20 minutes. This will allow the charging system to recharge your battery.

5. If this discharge condition reoccurs, consult a repairer.
Towing the Vehicle

If you need to have your vehicle towed, please use our service network or professional towing company.

The best method is to have the vehicle transported using a recovery vehicle.

If towing by 2 wheels, lift the front driving wheels and tow with the front tyres locked.

Towing the vehicle with all wheel drive system

Flat-bed equipment is the best method of towing the vehicle to be equipped with all wheel drive (AWD) system to avoid any damages.

If not available to use a flat-bed equipment, use a towing dolly to tow the vehicle as illustrated below.
10-58 Vehicle Care

Please observe the following procedures when towing a vehicle:

- No passenger should remain in the vehicle being towed.
- Release the parking brake of the towed vehicle and place the transmission gear in neutral.
- Switch on the emergency warning lights.
- Keep the speed limits.

Caution

If you tow the vehicle equipped with the all wheel drive (AWD) system while front or rear tyres are rolling on the road, the drive system in the vehicle could be severely damaged.

Never tow your vehicle with the front and rear tyres on the road.

Emergency towing

If it is not possible to have your vehicle towed by a recovery vehicle, proceed as follows:

Front Towing Eye

The front towing eye is provided under the front bumper. Remove air dam of driver's side and attach towing eye. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced road for a short distance and at low speeds.
Also the wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must be all in a good condition.

**Caution**

When towing the vehicle with a tow rope, the vehicle can be damaged.

To reduce damage:

- Use towing eye only if no other towing equipment is available.
- Only tow the vehicle from the front.
- Keep tow rope clear of bumper.
- Ensure tow rope is securely fixed to towing eye, at both ends. Check by pulling on tow rope.
- Towing with a tow rope could cause severe automatic transaxle damage. When towing vehicle with automatic transaxle, use flat bed or wheel lift equipment.

**Warning**

When towing with a tow rope, control of towed vehicle can be lost.

- Do not tow if the wheels, transaxle, axles, steering or brakes are damaged.
- Do not remove the key from the ignition switch as this will lock the steering and this will make the vehicle undriveable.

**Caution**

Do not use transport tie-down hook to tow your vehicle.

The vehicle could be damaged.

**Rear Towing Eye Attachment**

When towing another vehicle, use the rear towing eye attachment.

(Continued)
10-60 Vehicle Care

To use the rear towing eye attachment, do the following:

1. Find the rear towing eye attachment below the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

2. Open the cover on the rear bumper and screw the towing eye attachment firmly in place.

When the rear towing eye attachment is used, always pull the cable or chain in a straight direction with respect to the eye. Do not apply force to the hook from any side direction. To prevent damage, do not take up slack in the cable too quickly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use transport tie-down hook to tow another vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The vehicle could be damaged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a repairer.

Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax your vehicle regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.
If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wipers and rear window wiper must be switched off. Lock the vehicle so that the fuel filler flap cannot be opened. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a repairer.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

**Exterior lights**

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic.

Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

When cleaning the insects debris, grease dirt and tar on the exterior lamps or lenses, use only lukewarm water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap.

Hard cleaning with dry cloth can be damage on the exterior lamp or lens.

Don’t clean the exterior lamps with intensive car-washing fluid.

Avoid using the hazardous cleaner under turning on the light. It can be caused the lens crack by chemical reaction.

*Notice:* Follow the car-washing guide and use the mild detergent.

Micro lens cracks and welding area cracks may be caused if the car-wash guide is not followed.

Never use washing fluid as below for a cleaning purpose.

- Acetone
- Benzene
- Toluene
- xylene
- Thinner

**Polishing and waxing**

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads). Otherwise, the paintwork will dry out.
10-62 Vehicle Care

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and windscreen wiper blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

Paintwork damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms. Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a repairer.

Underbody

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal or dust control can collect on the underbody of your vehicle. Failure to remove these materials can accelerate corrosion and rust.

Periodically use plain water to flush these materials from the underbody of your vehicle.

Take care to clean any areas in which mud and other debris can collect. Loosen any sediment packed in closed area before flushing with water.

Interior Care

Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.
Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.
Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information ........... 11-1
Scheduled Maintenance
Scheduled Maintenance .... 11-2
Recommended Fluids
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ................. 11-8

General Information

Service Information
In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

Confirmations
Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service Guide.
The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing repairer.
Make sure that the Service Guide is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.
11-2 Service and Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Every 1 year / 15,000km (10,000 miles) (whichever occurs first)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Maintenance I – Use Maintenance I for the first service or if Maintenance II was performed previously

Maintenance II – Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I.

For vehicles equipped with an oil life monitoring system - If the oil change lamp illuminates and it has been 10 months or more from the previous maintenance, then the relevant maintenance should also be carried out.
## Service and Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Maintenance I</th>
<th>Maintenance II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Replace engine oil and filter.</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Inspect for any leaks or damage.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Inspect engine air filter.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Inspect tyres for inflation pressures and wear.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Inspect brake system.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Inspect engine coolant and windscreen washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Inspect suspension and steering components.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Inspect wiper blades and the operation of exterior lighting.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Inspect drive belts.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Perform any required additional services - see applicable section.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Check for Field Actions.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Replace Brake Fluid.</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Inspect engine cooling system.</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Inspect restraint system components.</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 11-4 Service and Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Maintenance I</th>
<th>Maintenance II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Inspect powertrain and driveline components.</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Lubricate body components.</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R - Replace or change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Captiva</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Replace pollen filter</td>
<td>Every 15,000km(10,000 miles) / 1 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Replace air filter</td>
<td>Every 60,000km(40,000 miles) / 4 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Replace spark plugs</td>
<td>Every 150,000km(100,000 miles) / 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Replace diesel fuel filter</td>
<td>Every 60,000km(40,000 miles) / 2 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Except Russia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Every 30,000km(20,000 miles) / 2 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Russia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Replace engine coolant</td>
<td>Every 240,000km(160,000 miles) / 5 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Replace automatic transmission oil</td>
<td>Normal conditions : every 150,000km(100,000 miles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Severe conditions : every 75,000km(50,000 miles)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Footnotes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Item</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Change engine oil immediately if the change engine oil lamp illuminates in the instruments cluster. If driving under severe conditions: short distance driving, extensive idling or driving in dusty condition, engine oil and the filter may require replacement more often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. The system should be inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 &amp; 17</td>
<td>If driving regularly in dusty conditions, inspect the filter more frequently. If driving regularly in dusty conditions, the filter may require replacement more often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and discs for surface condition. Inspect drum brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect other brake parts, including drums, wheel cylinders, callipers, handbrake, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damage, loose or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect power steering components for, binding, cracks, chafing, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windscreen and wiper blades, if contaminated. Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>If driving under severe conditions: driving in hilly or mountainous terrain, or towing a trailer frequently, brake fluid may require replacement more often.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 11-6 Service and Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Item</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine parts if needed. To help ensure correct operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working correctly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Ensure any torn or frayed safety belts are replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Lubricate all key lock cylinders, door hinges and latches, bonnet hinges and latches, and boot lid hinges and latches. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **General for auto transmission** | Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:  
  • In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.  
  • In hilly or mountainous terrain.  
  • When doing frequent trailer towing.  
  • Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service. |
| **General for belts** | Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary. |
Service and Maintenance 11-7

### Maintenance Item Note

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Item</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General all</td>
<td>Check all systems for interference or binding and for damaged or missing parts. Replace parts as needed. Replace any component that has excessive wear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre condition &amp; inflation pressure</td>
<td>Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel alignment</td>
<td>If necessary, rotate and balance wheels.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional servicing

**Extreme operating conditions**

Extreme operating conditions are given when at least one of the following occurs frequently:

- Repeated short-distance driving less than 5 miles (10 Km).
- Extensive idling and/or slow-speed driving in stop-and-go traffic.
- Driving on dusty roads.
- Driving on hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Towing a trailer.
- Driving in heavy city traffic where the outside temperatures regularly reach 90°F (32°C) or higher.
- Driving as a taxi, police or delivery vehicle.
- Frequent driving when outside temperature remains below freezing.

Police vehicles, taxis and driving school vehicles are also classified as operating under extreme conditions.

Under extreme operating conditions, it may be necessary to have certain scheduled service work done more frequently than the scheduled intervals.

Seek technical advice on the servicing requirements dependent on the specific operating conditions.
11-8 Service and Maintenance

Recommended Fluids

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Only use products that have been tested and approved. Damage resulting from the use of non-approved materials will not be covered by the warranty.

⚠️ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine Oil

Engine Oil is identified by its Quality and its Viscosity Grade. "Quality" and "Specification" are equivalent terms in this respect. Engine Oil Quality is more important than Viscosity when selecting which Engine Oil to use. The Oil Quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil ageing control, whereas Viscosity Grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Engine Oil Quality for Service
dexos

Selecting the right Engine Oil

Selecting the right Engine Oil depends on the proper Oil Specification and SAE Viscosity Grade.

Use and ask for Engine Oils with the dexos™ Certification Logo. Oils meeting the requirements of your vehicle should have the dexos™ Certification Logo on the container.

This Logo indicates that the oil has been approved by GM to the dexos™ Specification.

Your vehicle's Engine was filled at the factory with dexos™ approved Engine Oil.

Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos specification or an equivalent engine oil of the appropriate viscosity grade.

If you are unsure whether your oil is approved to the dexos specification, ask your service provider.

Use of substitute engine oils if dexos is unavailable: In the event that dexos approved engine oil is not available at an oil change or for maintaining proper oil level, you may use substitute engine oil of the qualities mentioned above. Use of
oils that do not meet the dexos specification, however, may result in reduced performance under certain circumstances.

**Topping up Engine Oil**

Engine Oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required Engine Oil (Quality and Viscosity).

If Engine Oil of the required Quality is not available, a maximum of 1 Litre ACEA A3/B3(Petrol) ACEA A3/B4 or ACEA C3(Diesel) may be used (only once between each oil change).

The Viscosity should be of the correct rating.

Use of Engine Oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only ACEA A5/B5 Quality is prohibited, as it can cause long term engine damage under certain operating conditions.

**Engine Oil Additives**

The use of supplemental Engine Oil Additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

**Engine Oil Viscosity Grades**

The SAE Viscosity Grade gives information of the thickness of the Oil.

**Multigrade Oil is indicated by two figures:**

The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature Viscosity and the second figure indicates the high temperature Viscosity.

SAE 5W-30 is the best Viscosity Grade for your vehicle. Do not use other Viscosity Grade Oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40 or 20W-50.

**Cold temperature operation:**

If operating your vehicle in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -25°C, a Viscosity Grade SAE 0W-xx should be used. An Oil of this Viscosity Grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures.
**11-10 Service and Maintenance**

When selecting an Oil of the appropriate Viscosity Grade be sure to always select an Oil that meets the dexos™, Specification.
- Down to -25°C: 5W-30, 5W-40.
- Down to -25°C and below: 0W-30, 0W-40.

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil.

**Coolant and antifreeze**
Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze.

In countries with moderate climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -35°C.

In countries with cold climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -50°C. This concentration should be maintained all year-round.

Maintain a sufficient concentration of anti-freeze.

Coolant additives intended to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of coolant additives will be rejected.

**Brake fluid**
- Only use our authorised brake fluid for this vehicle (DOT 4).
- Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.
- Brake fluid should be stored in a sealed container to avoid water absorption.
- Ensure brake fluid does not become contaminated.

**Power steering fluid**
- Only use Dexron VI fluid.

**Manual gearbox fluid**
- Only use Castrol BOT 303 fluid.

**Automatic transmission fluid**
- Only use Dexron VI fluid.

**Transfer case fluid (AWD)**
- Only use synthetic hypoid 75W-90 fluid.

**Differential carrier assembly fluid (AWD)**
- Only use synthetic hypoid 75W-90 fluid.
Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification
  Number (VIN) ................. 12-1
  Identification Plate ........ 12-1

Vehicle Data
  Engine Data ................ 12-3
  Performance ................ 12-3
  Curb Weight ............... 12-4
  Vehicle Dimensions ....... 12-5
  Capacities and Specifications ............... 12-5
  Tyre Pressure ............. 12-6

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification
Number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is engraved the centre of the bulkhead.

Identification Plate

The identification label is on the driver's door frame.
In some models, the label is located in the engine compartment.
# Vehicle Data

## Engine Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>2.4D</th>
<th>3.0 D</th>
<th>2.0 DSL</th>
<th>2.2 DSL (163PS)</th>
<th>2.2 DSL (184PS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of cylinders</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displacement [cc]</td>
<td>2384</td>
<td>2997</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>2231</td>
<td>2231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output [kW] at rpm</td>
<td>123 at 5600</td>
<td>190 at 6900</td>
<td>120 at 3800</td>
<td>120 at 3800</td>
<td>135 at 3800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. torque [Nm] at rpm</td>
<td>230 at 4600</td>
<td>288 at 5800</td>
<td>400 at 1750~2250</td>
<td>350 at 1500~3000</td>
<td>400 at 1750~2750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Performance

### Top speed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2.4D</th>
<th>3.0 D</th>
<th>2.0 DSL</th>
<th>2.2 DSL (163PS)</th>
<th>2.2 DSL (184PS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manual transaxle (km/h)</td>
<td>190 (FWD)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>189 (FWD)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>186 (AWD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>184 (AWD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transaxle (km/h)</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>188 (FWD)</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>182 (AWD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 12-4 Technical Data

#### Curb Weight

**With driver (75kg)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2.4D 5seat</th>
<th>2.4D 7seat</th>
<th>3.0D 5seat</th>
<th>3.0D 7seat</th>
<th>2.0 DSL 7 seat</th>
<th>2.2 DSL 5 seat</th>
<th>2.2 DSL 7 seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Front wheel drive (kg)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MT</td>
<td>1768~1848</td>
<td>1793~1873</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1853~1933</td>
<td>1878~1958</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1978~2058</td>
<td>1878~1958</td>
<td>1903~1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>All wheel drive (kg)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MT</td>
<td>1843~1923</td>
<td>1848~1948</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1928~2008</td>
<td>1953~2033</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Technical Data 12-5

### Vehicle Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Length [mm]</td>
<td>4673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width [mm]</td>
<td>1849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (with roof rack) [mm]</td>
<td>1756</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel base [mm]</td>
<td>2707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track (Front) [mm]</td>
<td>1569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track (Rear) [mm]</td>
<td>1576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum turning radius [m]</td>
<td>11.87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Capacities and Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>2.4D</th>
<th>3.0 D</th>
<th>DIESEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank [L]</td>
<td></td>
<td>65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil [L]</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# 12-6 Technical Data

## Tyre Pressure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Wheel dimension</th>
<th>Pressure (psi/bar/kPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>235/60R17</td>
<td>17x7J</td>
<td>Below 4 occupants : 35/2.4/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235/55R18</td>
<td>18x7J</td>
<td>Below 4 occupants : 35/2.4/240 (Eco. pressure : 38/2.6/260)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235/50R19</td>
<td>19x7J</td>
<td>Above 5 occupants, with towing trailer : 35/2.4/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T155/90R16 (Temporary)</td>
<td>16X4T</td>
<td>60/4.2/420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>60/4.2/420</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customer Information

Declaration of Conformity
This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to Directive 1999/5/EC. These systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Copies of the original Declarations of Conformity can be obtained on our website.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Event Data Recorders
The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated.

To read this data special equipment and access to the vehicle is required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced in a repairer. Some data is electronically fed into GM global diagnostic systems.
INDEX

A
Accessories and Modifications .............. 10-2
Adjustable Air Vents ............. 8-14
Adjustments
  Seat, Initial Drive ............ 3-3
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine .... 10-16
Air Conditioning ............ 8-3, 8-6
Air Conditioning Regular
  Operation ....................... 8-16
Air Filter, Passenger
  Compartment ...................... 8-15
Air Intake .................... 8-15
Airbags
  Curtain ....................... 3-19
  Front ......................... 3-17
  Light On-Off .......... 5-18
  On-Off Light ........ 5-18
  On-Off Switch ..... 3-20
  Safety Belt Tensioner Light .. 5-18
  Side ...................... 3-18
  System Check ........ 3-16
Alarm System
  Anti-theft .................... 2-11
  All-Wheel Drive ........ 9-15
  Light .................... 5-21
AM-FM Radio ..................... 7-9
Anti-theft
  Alarm System .................. 2-11
Antilock Brake
  System (ABS) .............. 9-17
Warning Light ............ 5-21
Appearance Care
  Exterior ...................... 10-60
  Interior .................... 10-62
Apply Foot brake Light .... 5-25
Audio
  Bluetooth ..................... 7-19
Audio Players .............. 7-12
  CD ......................... 7-12
  MP3 ....................... 7-14
Automatic
  Climate Control System ...... 8-6
  Engine Start/Stop Feature ... 9-4
  Light Control ........ 6-2
  Transmission .......... 9-8
  Transmission Fluid .... 10-16
Automatic Transmission
  Fault ......................... 9-12
  Interruption of Power
    Supply ....................... 9-12
  Selector Lever ........ 9-9
  Transmission Display .... 9-9
Auxiliary
  Devices .................... 7-17
B
Battery ...................... 10-22
  Jump Starting .............. 10-54
  Power Protection .......... 6-9
  Blade Replacement, Wiper .. 10-24
Bluetooth
  Overview .................... 7-87
  Bluetooth Audio ............. 7-19
Bonnet ..................... 10-3
Bonnet Ajar Light ........ 5-26
Brake
  System Warning Light ...... 5-20
  Brake lamps and Reversing Lamps
    Bulb Replacement ........ 10-27
## INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td>9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antilock</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid</td>
<td>10-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking</td>
<td>9-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Messages</td>
<td>5-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulb Replacement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre High-Mounted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake lamp (CHMBL)</td>
<td>10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Indicator Lamps</td>
<td>10-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlamps</td>
<td>10-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlamps and Parking Lamps</td>
<td>10-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Lamps</td>
<td>10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number Plate Lamps</td>
<td>10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Indicator Lamps</td>
<td>10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail lamps, Indicator, Brake lamps, and Reversing Lamps</td>
<td>10-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Monoxide</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Exhaust</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailgate</td>
<td>2-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalytic Converter</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cautions, Danger, and Warnings</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD Player</td>
<td>7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Locking System</td>
<td>2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre Console Storage</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre High-Mounted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake lamp (CHMBL)</td>
<td>10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chains, Tyre</td>
<td>10-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging System Light</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Light</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Restraint Installation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locations</td>
<td>3-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Restraint Systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top Tether</td>
<td>3-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Restraints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation Locations</td>
<td>3-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISOFIX</td>
<td>3-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems</td>
<td>3-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Care</td>
<td>10-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Care</td>
<td>10-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate Control System</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic</td>
<td>8-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate Control Systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heating and Ventilation</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compartment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer, Trip</td>
<td>5-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conformity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declaration of</td>
<td>13-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control of a Vehicle</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convex Mirrors</td>
<td>2-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>10-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Temperature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauge</td>
<td>5-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Temperature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Light</td>
<td>5-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covers</td>
<td>6-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Compartment</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misted Lamps</td>
<td>6-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel</td>
<td>10-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise Control</td>
<td>9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>5-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cupholders</td>
<td>4-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX  i-3

Curb Weight .......................... 12-4
Curtain Airbag System .......... 3-19

D
Danger, Warnings, and
  Cautions ........................... iii
Data Recorders, Event .......... 13-1
Daytime Running
  Lamps (DRL) ....................... 6-4
Declaration of Conformity .... 13-1
Descent Control System
  Light .............................. 5-21
Devices
  Auxiliary ......................... 7-17
Diesel Fuel Filter .......... 10-24
Diesel Particulate Filter .... 9-7
Diesel Particulate Filter
  Light .............................. 5-23
Dimensions
  Vehicle ......................... 12-5
Displays
  Automatic Transmission .... 9-9
  Service ......................... 5-14
  Transmission .................. 5-17
Dome Lamps ....................... 6-7

Door
  Ajar Light ....................... 5-26
  Central Locking System ...... 2-8
  Locks ............................. 2-7
  Manual Door Locks .......... 2-8
Drive Systems
  All-Wheel Drive .............. 9-15
Driver Information Centre (DIC) ........ 5-27

E
Electrical System
  Fuses ............................ 10-29
Electronic Climate Control
  System .......................... 8-13
Electronic Stability Control .... 8-20
Electronic Stability Control
  (ESC) Off Light .............. 5-22
Electronic Stability Control
  Indicator Light ............... 5-22
End-of-Life Vehicle
  Recovery ....................... 10-3

Engine
  Air Cleaner/Filter ............ 10-16
  Automatic Start/Stop
    Feature ....................... 9-4
  Change Engine Oil Light .... 5-24
  Check and Service Engine
    Soon .......................... 5-19
  Compartment Overview ...... 10-5
  Coolant ......................... 10-17
  Coolant Temperature
    Gauge .......................... 5-13
  Coolant Temperature
    Warning Light ................ 5-22
  Exhaust ......................... 9-6
  Overheating .................... 10-18
  Pressure Light ................ 5-23
  Reduced Power Light ......... 5-25
  Starting ......................... 9-3
  Engine Data ..................... 12-3
Engines
  Diesel Fuel ...................... 9-32
  Petrol Fuel .................... 9-32
Event Data Recorders ......... 13-1
Exterior Lamp Controls ........ 6-1
INDEX

F
Fault, Automatic Transmission ............. 9-12
Filter
Diesel Fuel .......................... 10-24
Diesel Particulate ................. 9-7
Filter, Engine Air Cleaner .......... 10-16
Fixed Air Vents ...................... 8-14
Flash-to-Pass .................... 6-4
Flat Tyre
Changing ......................... 10-50
Fluid
Automatic Transmission ... 10-16
Brakes ......................... 10-21
Power Steering ............... 10-19
Washer ......................... 10-20
Fog Lamp Light, Rear .......... 5-25
Fog Lamps
Front .................................. 6-5
Rear .................................. 6-6
Folding Mirrors ................. 2-16
Folding Seat-back ............. 3-6
Front Airbag System .......... 3-17
Front Fog Lamp Light .................. 5-25
Front Indicator Lamps ......... 10-27
Front Seat Position Seats
Adjustment ...................... 3-3
Front Seats
Adjustment ...................... 3-4
Heated ......................... 3-6
Fuel
Additives ....................... 9-31
Diesel Engines .......... 9-32
Economy Light .............. 5-24
Filling the Tank ............ 9-33
Gauge ....................... 5-13
Low Fuel Warning Light .... 5-24
Petrol Engines .......... 9-32
Water in Fuel Warning Light .............. 5-24
Fuel for Diesel Engines .......... 9-32
Fuses ....................... 10-29
Gauges (cont'd)
Rev Counter ...................... 5-12
Service Display ............ 5-14
Speedometer .................. 5-9
Transmission Display .... 5-17
Getting Started, Navigation .. 7-42
Glove Box .................. 4-2

H
Hands-Free Phone ............ 7-88
Hazard Lights ................ 6-4
Head Restraints .............. 3-1
Active ...................... 3-3
Headlamp Range Adjustment ... 6-4
Headlamps
Automatic Light Control .... 6-2
Bulb Replacement .......... 10-25
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) .................. 6-4
Flash-to-Pass ................ 6-4
Main-Beam On Light .......... 5-25
Main/Dipped Beam Changer .. 6-3
Parking Lamps ............. 10-26
Range Adjustment ........... 6-4
Washer ...................... 5-7
INDEX

Heated
  Rear Seats ................. 3-12
  Rear Window ............... 2-21
Heated Front Seats ........... 3-6
Heated Mirrors ............... 2-17
Heating ..................... 8-1
Heating and Air Conditioning ... 8-6
Heating and Ventilation
  System .................... 8-1
Horn ....................... 1-9, 5-3

I
Identification Plate .......... 12-1
Ignition Positions .......... 9-2
Immobiliser
  Light ..................... 5-25
  Indicator .................. 5-17
Information
  Service .................... 11-1
Information on Loading the
  Vehicle .................... 4-8
Instrument Panel
  Overview ................... 1-5
  Storage Area ............. 4-1
Interruption of Power Supply ... 9-12
Introduction ................. .iii, 7-1

ISOFIX Child Restraint
  Systems .................... 3-25

J
Jump Starting ................ 10-54

K
Key and Lock Messages ...... 5-28
Keys ....................... 2-1

L
Lamps
  Daytime Running (DRL) .... 6-4
  Dome ...................... 6-7
  Exterior Controls ......... 6-1
  Front Fog ................. 6-5
  Front Indicator ........... 10-27
Headlamps and Parking
  Lamps .................... 10-26
  Interior .................. 10-28
Malfunction Indicator ....... 5-19
Misted Covers ............... 6-6
Number Plate ................ 10-28
Reading .................... 6-7

Lamps (cont'd)
  Rear Fog .................... 6-6
  Reversing .................. 6-6
  Side Indicator ............. 10-28

Light
  Diesel Particulate Filter .... 5-23
  Electronic Stability Control
    (ESC), Off ................ 5-22
  Pre-Heat ................... 5-22

Lighting
  Entry ........................ 6-8
  Illumination Control ....... 6-6

Lights
  Airbag and Safety Belt
    Tensioner ................ 5-18
  Airbag On-Off .............. 5-18
  All-Wheel Drive ............ 5-21
  Antilock Brake System
    (ABS) Warning ........... 5-21
  Apply Foot brake ........... 5-25
  Automatic Control .......... 6-2
  Bonnet Ajar ................ 5-26
  Brake System Warning ...... 5-20
  Change Engine Oil .......... 5-24
  Charging System .......... 5-19
  Cruise Control ............ 5-26
  Descent Control System .... 5-21
INDEX

Lights (cont'd)
  Door Ajar ...................... 5-26
  Engine Coolant
    Temperature Warning ........ 5-22
  Engine Oil Pressure ........ 5-23
  Flash-to-Pass ................ 6-4
  Fog Lamp, Rear ............ 5-25
  Front Fog Lamp ............ 5-25
  Fuel Economy ............. 5-24
  Immobiliser ............... 5-25
  Low Engine Oil Level .... 5-24
  Low Fuel Warning ........ 5-24
  Main-Beam On ............. 5-25
  Main/Dipped Beam Changer .. 6-3
  Reduced Engine Power .... 5-25
  Seat Belt Reminders ...... 5-17
  Security ................... 5-25
  Service Vehicle Soon .... 5-19
  Speed Sensitive Power
    Steering (SSPS) Warning .. 5-22
  Tail lamp Indicator ....... 5-26
  Trailer Indicator ......... 5-26
  Tyre Pressure Monitoring
    System .................. 5-23
  Ultrasonic Parking Sensor .. 5-22
  Water in Fuel Warning .... 5-24
  Lights, Hazard ........... 6-4

Load Compartment
  Cover ...................... 4-6
  Loading the Vehicle ...... 4-8

Locks
  Central Locking System ... 2-8
  Door ...................... 2-7
  Manual Door .............. 2-8
  Safety .................... 2-9

Low Engine Oil Level Light ... 5-24
Low Fuel Warning Light .... 5-24
Luggage Compartment ....... 4-6

M
Main-Beam On Light ........ 5-25

Maintenance
  Air Conditioning Regular Operation ........ 8-16

Maintenance Schedule
  Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ........ 11-8
  Scheduled Maintenance ........ 11-2

Malfunction Indicator Lamp .... 5-19
Manual Gearbox ............. 9-14
Fluid ..................... 10-16

Menu
  Setup .................... 7-76

Messages
  Brake System ............ 5-28
  Key and Lock ............ 5-28
  Transmission ............ 5-29
  Vehicle .................. 5-28
  Mileometer ............. 5-9

Mirrors
  Automatic Dimming Rearview ........ 2-18
  Convex .................. 2-16
  Folding .................. 2-16
  Heated .................. 2-17
  Manual Rearview ........ 2-17
  Remote Control .......... 2-16
  Misted Lamp Covers ...... 6-6

Monitor System, Tyre Pressure ........ 10-39
MP3 ..................... 7-14

N
Navigation
  Getting Started .......... 7-42
  System Overview .......... 7-20
  Using the System .......... 7-51
New Vehicle Run-In ........ 9-2
INDEX

O

Oil
Change Engine Oil Light .................. 5-24
Engine ........................................... 10-11
Low Engine Oil Level Light .............. 5-24
Pressure Light ................................. 5-23
Open & Start System ...................... 2-4
Operation, Infotainment
System ........................................ 7-8
Other Service Items
Air Conditioning System ............... 8-3
Outlets
Power ......................................... 5-8
Overheating, Engine .................... 10-18
Overview, Infotainment
System ........................................ 7-3
Overview, Navigation
System ........................................ 7-20

P

Parking ........................................... 9-6
Assist, Ultrasonic ............................ 9-26
Brake ............................................. 9-18
Ultrasonic Sensor Light .................. 5-22
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter ............................................. 8-15
Performance .................................. 12-3
Phone
Bluetooth ........................................ 7-87
Hands-Free .................................... 7-88
Power
Outlets .......................................... 5-8
Protection, Battery ......................... 6-9
Reduced Engine Light ..................... 5-25
Seat Adjustment ............................... 3-5
Steering Fluid ................................. 10-19
Windows ......................................... 2-19
Pre-Heat Light ................................ 5-22
Pregnancy, Using Safety
Belts .............................................. 3-15
Pressure
Tyre ............................................... 12-6

R

Radios
AM-FM Radio ................................... 7-9
Reading Lamps ................................ 6-7
Rear Fog Lamp Light ...................... 5-25
Rear Fog Lamps ............................... 6-6
Rear Seats ....................................... 3-8
Heated ......................................... 3-12
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) ............. 9-29
Rear Window Washer/Wiper ............. 5-6
Rear Windows
Heated ......................................... 2-21
Rearview Mirrors ............................ 2-17
Automatic Dimming ....................... 2-18
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants ...................................... 11-8
Reduced Engine Power
Light .............................................. 5-25
Remote Control Mirrors ................. 2-16
Repair Kit
Tyre .............................................. 10-42
Rev Counter ..................................... 5-12
Reversing Lamps .............................. 6-6
Ride Control Systems .................... 9-20
Electronic Stability (ESC) ............. 9-20
i-8  INDEX

Roof
  Sunroof ...................... 2-22
  Roof Panelling ............... 4-5
  Roof Rack System ............ 4-7
  Rotation, Tyres .............. 10-40
  Running-In, New Vehicle ...... 9-2

  S
  Safety Belts .................. 3-12
    Child Restraints ............ 3-23
    Three-Point .................. 3-14
    Use During Pregnancy ....... 3-15
  Safety Locks .................. 2-9
  Scheduled Maintenance ...... 11-2

  Seat Belts
    Reminders ..................... 5-17

  Seats
    Adjustment, Front ............ 3-4
    Folding Seat-back ............ 3-6
    Head Restraints ............. 3-1
    Heated Front .................. 3-6
    Heated, Rear .................. 3-12
    Position, Front ............... 3-3
    Power Adjustment, Front ...... 3-5
    Rear .......................... 3-8
    Underseat Storage ............ 4-4

  Security
    Light ........................ 5-25
    Selector Lever ................. 9-9
    Service ........................ 8-17
    Accessories and
      Modifications ................. 10-2
    Doing Your Own Work ......... 10-3
    Engine Soon Light ............. 5-19
    Vehicle Soon Light .......... 5-19

  Service and Maintenance
    Service Information ........... 11-1
    Service Display ............... 5-14
    Service Information ........... 11-1
    Setup Menu ..................... 7-76
    Side Airbag System ............ 3-18
    Side Indicator Lamps ........ 10-28
    Signals, Turn and
      Lane-Change ................... 6-5
    Specifications and
      Capacities .................... 12-5
    Speed Sensitive Power
      Steering (SSPS) Warning
        Light ......................... 5-22
    Speedometer ................... 5-9

  Start System
    Open .......................... 2-4

  Starting the Engine .......... 9-3

  Steering
    Fluid, Power ................ 10-19
    Wheel Adjustment ............. 5-2
    Wheel Controls ............... 5-3

  Storage
    Load Compartment Cover ...... 4-6
    Luggage Compartment ........ 4-6
    Vehicle ....................... 10-2

  Storage Areas
    Centre Console ............... 4-4
    Glove Box ...................... 4-2
    Information on Loading the
      Vehicle ....................... 4-8
    Instrument Panel ............. 4-1
    Roof Panelling ............... 4-5
    Roof Rack System ............. 4-7
    Sunglasses ..................... 4-4
    Underseat ....................... 4-4
    Sun Visors ..................... 2-21
    Sunglass Storage ............. 4-4
    Sunroof ......................... 2-22

  Switches
    Airbag On-Off ................ 3-20

  System
    Roof Rack ..................... 4-7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
<th>i-9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail lamp Indicator Light</td>
<td>5-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailgate</td>
<td>2-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taillights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulb Replacement</td>
<td>10-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Data</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Pressure</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-Point Safety Belt</td>
<td>3-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools</td>
<td>10-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top Tether Child Restraint Systems</td>
<td>3-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle</td>
<td>10-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer Indicator Light</td>
<td>5-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid, Automatic</td>
<td>10-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid, Manual</td>
<td>10-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages</td>
<td>5-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission Display</td>
<td>5-17, 9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip Computer</td>
<td>5-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn and Lane-Change Signals</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn Signal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulb Replacement</td>
<td>10-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Pressure</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Light</td>
<td>5-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Repair Kit</td>
<td>10-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chains</td>
<td>10-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing</td>
<td>10-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designations</td>
<td>10-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Different Size</td>
<td>10-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure Monitor System</td>
<td>10-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>10-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance</td>
<td>10-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter</td>
<td>10-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyres and Wheels</td>
<td>10-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>U</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrasonic Parking Assist</td>
<td>9-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrasonic Parking Sensor Light</td>
<td>5-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underseat Storage</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using This Manual</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Control</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identification Number (VIN)</td>
<td>12-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages</td>
<td>5-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Soon Light</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td>10-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Care</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Pressure</td>
<td>10-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Dimensions</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Identification Plate</td>
<td>12-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Recovery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End-of-Life</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Storage</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustable Air</td>
<td>8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed Air Vents</td>
<td>8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visors</td>
<td>2-21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

W

Warning
  Brake System Light ........ 5-20
Warnings  .................. iii
  Cautions and Danger ....... iii
  Hazard Lights ............... 6-4
Washer Fluid ............... 10-20
Washer, Headlamps .......... 5-7
Water in Fuel Warning Light ... 5-24
Weights
  Curb  ..................... 12-4
Wheel Covers ................ 10-41
Wheels
  Alignment and Tyre
    Balance .................... 10-41
  Different Size ............. 10-40
Wheels and Tyres ............ 10-38
Windows
  Heated, Rear ............... 2-21
  Power ....................... 2-19
Windscreen
  Wiper/Washer ............... 5-3
Winter Tyres ................. 10-38
Wiper Blade Replacement ...... 10-24
Wipers
  Rear Washer ............... 5-6